

# **TPM Main**

## **Part 1 Design Principles**

**Specification Version 1.2**  
**Revision 94**  
**29 March 2006**

Contact: [tpmwg@trustedcomputinggroup.org](mailto:tpmwg@trustedcomputinggroup.org)

**TCG Published**

Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2006

**TCG**

Copyright © 2003-2006 Trusted Computing Group, Incorporated.

#### Disclaimer

THIS SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ANY WARRANTY OTHERWISE ARISING OUT OF ANY PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE. Without limitation, TCG disclaims all liability, including liability for infringement of any proprietary rights, relating to use of information in this specification and to the implementation of this specification, and TCG disclaims all liability for cost of procurement of substitute goods or services, lost profits, loss of use, loss of data or any incidental, consequential, direct, indirect, or special damages, whether under contract, tort, warranty or otherwise, arising in any way out of use or reliance upon this specification or any information herein.

No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any TCG or TCG member intellectual property rights is granted herein.

Except that a license is hereby granted by TCG to copy and reproduce this specification for internal use only.

Contact the Trusted Computing Group at [www.trustedcomputinggroup.org](http://www.trustedcomputinggroup.org) for information on specification licensing through membership agreements.

Any marks and brands contained herein are the property of their respective owners.

## **Acknowledgement**

TCG wishes to thank all those who contributed to this specification. This version builds on the work published in version 1.1 and those who helped on that version have helped on this version.

A special thank you goes to the members of the TPM workgroup who had early access to this version and made invaluable contributions, corrections and support.

David Grawrock

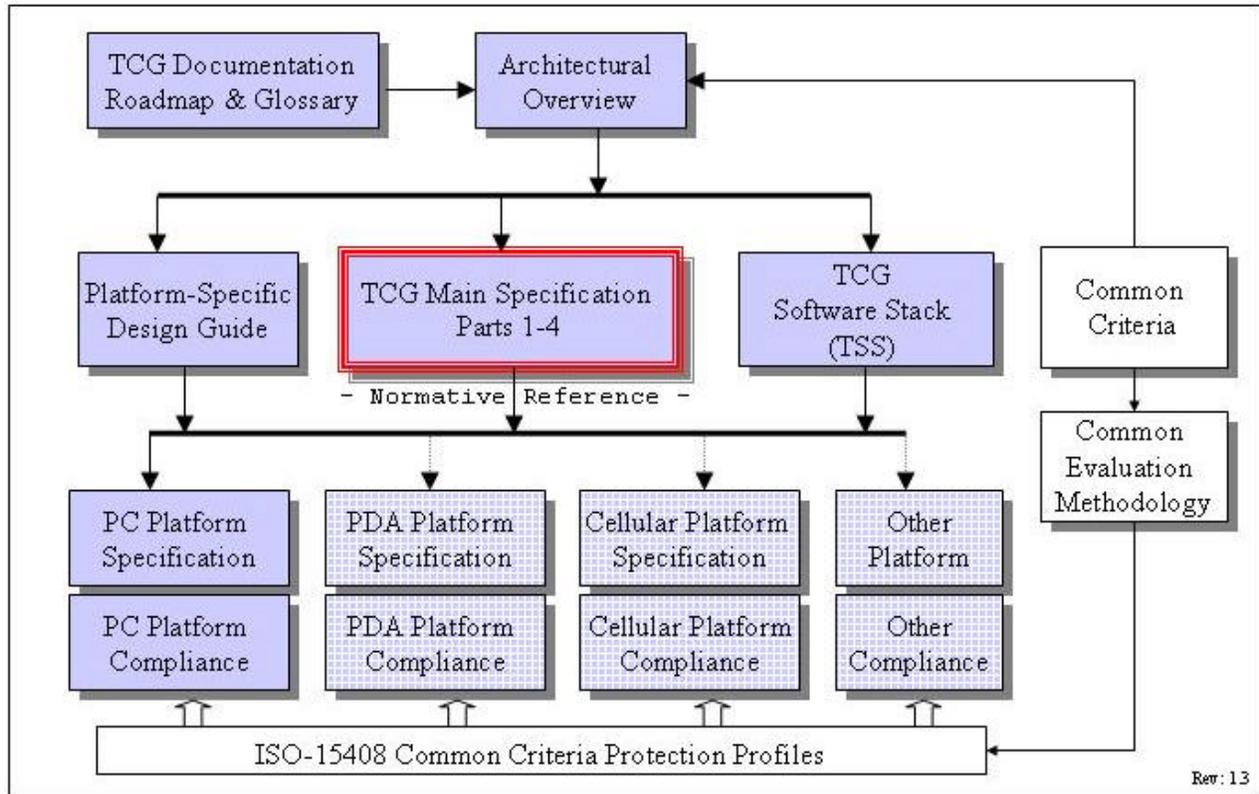
TPM Workgroup chair

## Change History

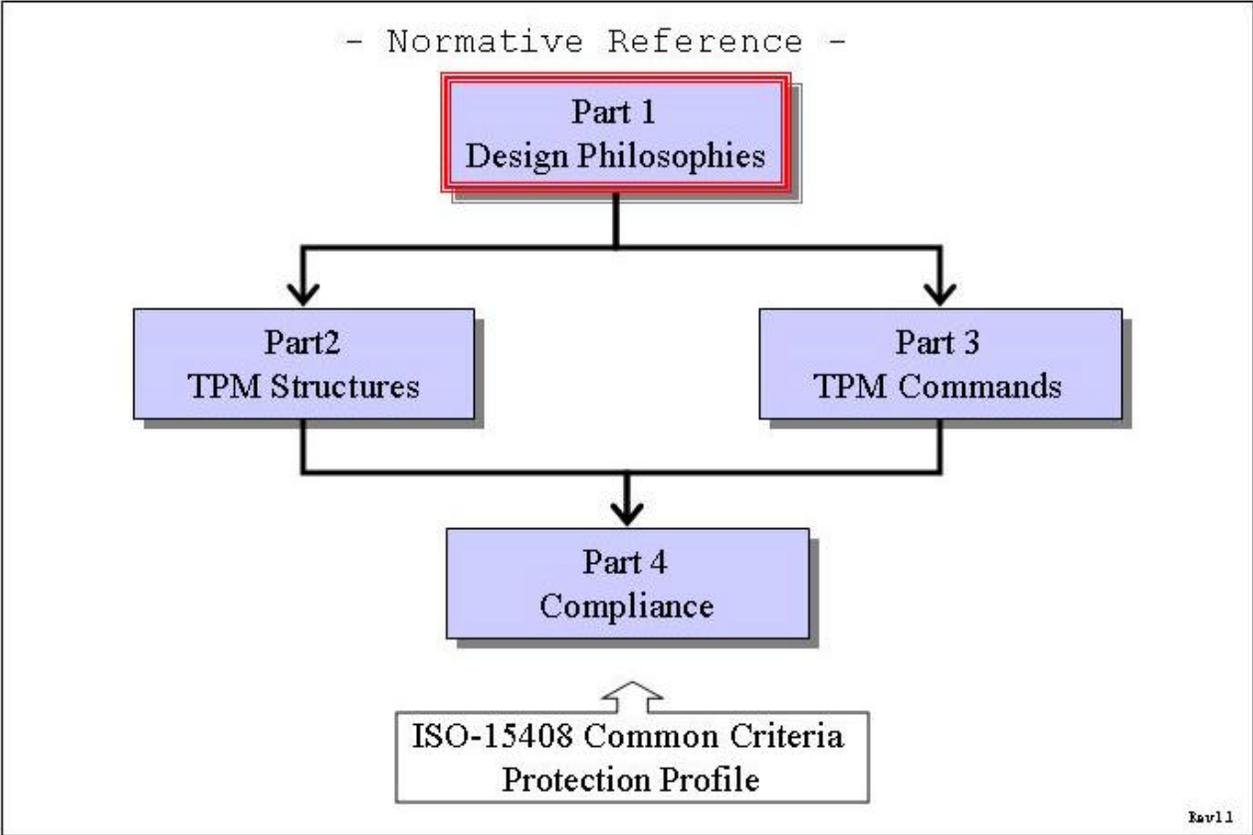
Version	Date	Description
Rev 50	Jun 2003	Started 30 Jun 2003 by David Grawrock First cut at the design principles
Rev 52	Jul 2003	Started 15 Jul 2003 by David Grawrock Moved
Rev 58	Aug 2003	Started 27 Aug 2003 by David Grawrock All emails through 28 August 2003 New delegation from Graeme merged
Rev 62	Oct 2003	Approved by WG, TC and Board as public release of 1.2
Rev 63	Oct 2003	Started 2 Oct 2003 by David Grawrock Kerry email 7 Oct "Various items in rev62" kerry email 10 Oct "Other issues in rev 62" Changes to audit generation
Rev 64	Oct 2003	Started 12 Oct 2003 by David Grawrock Removed PCRWRITE usage in the NV write commands Added locality to transport_out log Disable readpubek now set in takeownership. DisableReadpubek now deprecated, as the functionality is moot. Oshrats email regarding DSAPI/OSAP sessions and the invalidation of them on delegation changes Changes for CMK commands. Oshrats email with minor 63 comments
Rev 65	Nov 2003	Action in NV_DefineSpace to ignore the Booleans in the input structure (Kerry email of 10/30) Transport changes from markus 11/6 email Set rules for encryption of parameters for OIAP,OSAP and DSAP Rewrote section on debug PCR to specify that the platform spec must indicate which register is the debug PCR Orlando FIF decisions CMK changes from Graeme
Rev 66	Nov 2003	Comment that OSAP tied to owner delegation needs to be treated internally in the TPM as a DSAP session Minor edits from Monty Added new GetCapability as requested by PC Specific WG Added new DP section that shows mandatory and optional Oshrat email of 11/27 Change PCR attributes to use locality selection instead of an array of BOOL's Removed transport sessions as something to invalidate when a resource type is flushed. Oshrat email of 12/3 added checks for NV_Locked in the NV commands Additional emails from the WG for minor editing fixes
Rev 67	Dec 2003	Made locality_modifier always a 1 size Changed NV index values to add the reserved bit. Also noticed that the previous NV index values were 10 bytes not 8. Edited them to correct size. Audit changes to ensure audit listed as optional and the previous commands properly deleted Added new OSAP authorization encryption. Changes made with new entity types, new section in DP (bottom of doc) and all command rewritten to check for the new encryption
Rev 68	Jan 2004	Added new section to identify all changes made for FIPS. Made some FIPS changes on creating and loading of keys Added change that OSAP encryption IV creation always uses both odd and even nonces Added SEALX ordinal and changes to TPM_STORED_DATA12 and seal/unseal to support this
Rev 69	Feb 2004	Fixup on stored_data12.

		Removed magic4 from the GPIO Added in section 34 of DP further discussion of versioning and getcap DP todo section cleaned up Changed store_privkey in migrate_asymkey Moved text for getcapabilities – hopefully it is easier to read and follow through on now.
Rev 70	Mar 2004	Rewrite structure doc on PCR selection usage. New getcap to answer questions regarding TPM support for pcr selection size
Rev 71	Mar 2004	Change terms from authorization data to AuthData.
Rev 72	Mar 2004	Zimmermann's changes for DAA Added TPM_Quote2, this includes new structure and ordinal Updated key usage table to include the 1.2 commands Added security properties section that links the main spec to the conformance WG guidelines (in section 1)
Rev 73	Apr 2004	Changed CMK_MigrateKey to use TPM_KEY12 and removed two input parameters Allowed TPM_Getcapability and TPM_GetTestResult to execute prior to TPM_Startup when in failure mode
Rev 74	May 2004	Minor editing to reflect comments on web site. Locked spec and submitted for IP review
Rev 76	Aug 2004	All comments from the WG Included new SetValue command and all of the indexes to make that work
Rev 77	Aug 2004	All comments from the WG
Rev 78	Oct 2004	Comments from WG. Added new getcaps to report and query current TPM version
Rev 82	Jan 2005	All changes from emails and minutes (I think).
Rev 84	Feb 2005	Final changes for 1.2 level 2
Rev 88	Aug 2005	Eratta level 2 release candidate
Rev 91	Sept. 2005	Update to Figure 9 (b) in section 9.2 by Tasneem Brutch

# TCG Doc Roadmap – Main Spec



# TCG Main Spec Roadmap



## Table of Contents

1.	Scope and Audience.....	1
1.1	Key words .....	1
1.2	Statement Type .....	1
2.	Description.....	2
2.1	TODO (notes to keep the editor on track) .....	2
2.2	Questions .....	2
2.2.1	Delegation Questions .....	6
2.2.2	NV Questions.....	10
3.	Protection .....	12
3.1	Introduction .....	12
3.2	Threat .....	13
3.3	Protection of functions .....	13
3.4	Protection of information .....	13
3.5	Side effects .....	14
3.6	Exceptions and clarifications.....	14
4.	TPM Architecture.....	16
4.1	Interoperability.....	16
4.2	Components.....	16
4.2.1	Input and Output .....	17
4.2.2	Cryptographic Co-Processor .....	17
4.2.2.1	RSA Engine.....	18
4.2.2.2	Signature Operations .....	18
4.2.2.3	Symmetric Encryption Engine .....	18
4.2.2.4	Using Keys .....	19
4.2.3	Key Generation.....	19
4.2.3.1	Asymmetric – RSA.....	20
4.2.3.2	Nonce Creation.....	20
4.2.4	HMAC Engine.....	20
4.2.5	Random Number Generator .....	21
4.2.5.1	Entropy Source and Collector.....	22
4.2.5.2	State Register.....	22
4.2.5.3	Mixing Function .....	23
4.2.5.4	RNG Reset .....	23
4.2.6	SHA-1 Engine.....	23
4.2.7	Power Detection.....	24

4.2.8	Opt-In	24
4.2.9	Execution Engine	25
4.2.10	Non-Volatile Memory	26
4.3	Data Integrity Register (DIR)	26
4.4	Platform Configuration Register (PCR)	26
5.	Endorsement Key Creation	29
5.1	Controlling Access to PRIVEK	29
5.2	Controlling Access to PUBEK	30
6.	Attestation Identity Keys	31
7.	TPM Ownership	32
7.1	Platform Ownership and Root of Trust for Storage	32
8.	Authentication and Authorization Data	33
8.1	Dictionary Attack Considerations	34
9.	TPM Operation	36
9.1	TPM Initialization & Operation State Flow	37
9.1.1	Initialization	37
9.2	Self-Test Modes	39
9.2.1	Operational Self-Test	41
9.3	Startup	45
9.4	Operational Mode	45
9.4.1	Enabling a TPM	47
9.4.2	Activating a TPM	48
9.4.3	Taking TPM Ownership	49
9.4.3.1	Enabling Ownership	50
9.4.4	Transitioning Between Operational States	51
9.5	Clearing the TPM	51
10.	Physical Presence	53
11.	Root of Trust for Reporting (RTR)	55
11.1	Platform Identity	55
11.2	RTR to Platform Binding	56
11.3	Platform Identity and Privacy Considerations	56
11.4	Attestation Identity Keys	56
11.4.1	AIK Creation	57
11.4.2	AIK Storage	58
12.	Root of Trust for Storage (RTS)	59
12.1	Loading and Unloading Blobs	59
13.	Transport Sessions and Authorization Protocols	60

13.1	Authorization Session Setup.....	62
13.2	Parameter Declarations for OIAP and OSAP Examples.....	63
13.2.1	Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP).....	65
13.3	Object-Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP).....	67
13.4	Authorization Session Handles.....	71
13.5	Authorization-Data Insertion Protocol (ADIP).....	72
13.6	AuthData Change Protocol (ADCP).....	75
13.7	Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol (AACP).....	76
14.	FIPS 140 Physical Protection.....	77
14.1	TPM Profile for FIPS Certification.....	77
15.	Maintenance.....	78
15.1	Field Upgrade.....	79
16.	Proof of Locality.....	81
17.	Monotonic Counter.....	82
18.	Transport Protection.....	85
18.1	Transport encryption and authorization.....	87
18.1.1	MGF1 parameters.....	89
18.1.2	HMAC calculation.....	89
18.1.3	Transport log creation.....	90
18.1.4	Additional Encryption Mechanisms.....	90
18.2	Transport Error Handling.....	90
18.3	Exclusive Transport Sessions.....	91
18.4	Transport Audit Handling.....	92
18.4.1	Auditing of wrapped commands.....	92
19.	Audit Commands.....	94
19.1	Audit Monotonic Counter.....	96
20.	Design Section on Time Stamping.....	97
20.1	Tick Components.....	97
20.2	Basic Tick Stamp.....	98
20.3	Associating a TCV with UTC.....	98
20.4	Additional Comments and Questions.....	100
21.	Context Management.....	103
22.	Eviction.....	105
23.	Session pool.....	106
24.	Initialization Operations.....	107
25.	HMAC digest rules.....	109
26.	Generic authorization session termination rules.....	110

27. PCR Grand Unification Theory .....	111
27.1    Validate Key for use.....	114
28. Non Volatile Storage.....	116
28.1    NV storage design principles .....	117
28.1.1    NV Storage use models.....	117
28.2    Use of NV storage during manufacturing .....	119
29. Delegation Model .....	120
29.1    Table Requirements.....	120
29.2    How this works .....	121
29.3    Family Table.....	123
29.4    Delegate Table .....	124
29.5    Delegation Administration Control.....	125
29.5.1    Control in Phase 1.....	126
29.5.2    Control in Phase 2.....	127
29.5.3    Control in Phase 3.....	127
29.6    Family Verification .....	127
29.7    Use of commands for different states of TPM .....	129
29.8    Delegation Authorization Values .....	129
29.8.1    Using the authorization value .....	130
29.9    DSAP description .....	130
30. Physical Presence.....	134
30.1    Use of Physical Presence.....	134
31. TPM Internal Asymmetric Encryption .....	136
31.1.1    TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1.....	136
31.1.2    TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15.....	137
31.1.3    TPM_ES_SYM_CNT.....	137
31.1.4    TPM_ES_SYM_OFB.....	137
31.2    TPM Internal Digital Signatures .....	138
31.2.1    TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1.....	138
31.2.2    TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER.....	138
31.2.3    TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO .....	138
31.2.4    Use of Signature Schemes .....	138
32. Key Usage Table .....	140
33. Direct Anonymous Attestation .....	142
33.1    TPM_DAA_JOIN .....	142
33.2    TPM_DAA_Sign .....	144
33.3    DAA Command summary.....	144

33.3.1	TPM setup .....	145
33.3.2	JOIN.....	145
33.3.3	SIGN.....	149
34.	General Purpose IO.....	152
35.	Redirection.....	153
36.	Structure Versioning .....	154
37.	Certified Migration Key Type .....	156
37.1	Certified Migration Requirements.....	156
37.2	Key Creation .....	157
37.3	Migrate CMK to a MA.....	157
37.4	Migrate CMK to a MSA.....	158
38.	Revoke Trust.....	159
39.	Mandatory and Optional Functional Blocks.....	161
40.	Optional Authentication Encryption .....	164
41.	1.1a and 1.2 Differences .....	166

## 1. Scope and Audience

The TPCA main specification is an industry specification that enables trust in computing platforms in general. The main specification is broken into parts to make the role of each document clear. A version of the specification (like 1.2) requires all parts to be a complete specification.

A TPM designer **MUST** be aware that for a complete definition of all requirements necessary to build a TPM, the designer **MUST** use the appropriate platform specific specification for all TPM requirements.

### 1.1 Key words

The key words “**MUST**,” “**MUST NOT**,” “**REQUIRED**,” “**SHALL**,” “**SHALL NOT**,” “**SHOULD**,” “**SHOULD NOT**,” “**RECOMMENDED**,” “**MAY**,” and “**OPTIONAL**” in the chapters 2-10 normative statements are to be interpreted as described in [RFC-2119].

### 1.2 Statement Type

Please note a very important distinction between different sections of text throughout this document. You will encounter two distinctive kinds of text: informative comment and normative statements. Because most of the text in this specification will be of the kind normative statements, the authors have informally defined it as the default and, as such, have specifically called out text of the kind informative comment. They have done this by flagging the beginning and end of each informative comment and highlighting its text in gray. This means that unless text is specifically marked as of the kind informative comment, you can consider it of the kind normative statements.

For example:

#### **Start of informative comment**

This is the first paragraph of 1–n paragraphs containing text of the kind *informative comment* ...

This is the second paragraph of text of the kind *informative comment* ...

This is the nth paragraph of text of the kind *informative comment* ...

To understand the TCG specification the user **MUST** read the specification. (This use of **MUST** does not require any action).

#### **End of informative comment**

This is the first paragraph of one or more paragraphs (and/or sections) containing the text of the kind normative statements ...

To understand the TCG specification the user **MUST** read the specification. (This use of **MUST** indicates a keyword usage and requires an action).

## 35 **2. Description**

36 The design principles give the basic concepts of the TPM and generic information relative to  
37 TPM functionality.

38 A TPM designer MUST review and implement the information in the TPM Main specification  
39 (parts 1-4) and review the platform specific document for the intended platform. The  
40 platform specific document will contain normative statements that affect the design and  
41 implementation of a TPM.

42 A TPM designer MUST review and implement the requirements, including testing and  
43 evaluation, as set by the TCG Conformance Workgroup. The TPM MUST comply with the  
44 requirements and pass any evaluations set by the Conformance Workgroup. The TPM MAY  
45 undergo more stringent testing and evaluation.

46 The question section keeps track of questions throughout the development of the  
47 specification and hence can have information that is no longer current or moot. The  
48 purpose of the questions is to track the history of various decisions in the specification to  
49 allow those following behind to gain some insight into the committees thinking on various  
50 points.

### 51 **2.1 TODO (notes to keep the editor on track)**

52

### 53 **2.2 Questions**

54 How to version the flag structures?

55 I suggest that we simply put the version into the structure and pass it back in the  
56 structure. Add the version information into the persistent and volatile flag structures.

57 When using the encryption transport failures are easy to see. Also the watcher on the line  
58 can tell where the error occurred. If the failure occurs at the transport level the response  
59 is an error (small packet) and it is in the clear. If the error occurs during execution of the  
60 command then the response is a small encrypted packet. Should we expand the packet  
61 size or simply let this go through?

62 Not an issue.

63 Do we restrict the loading of a counter to once per TPM\_Startup(Clear)?

64 Yes once a counter is set it must remain the same until the next successful startup.

65 Does the time stamp work as a change on the tag or as a wrapped command like the  
66 transport protection.

67 While possibly easier at the HW level the tag mechanism seems to be harder at the SW  
68 level as to what commands are sent to the TPM. The issue of how the SW presents  
69 the TS session to the SW writer is not an issue. This is due to the fact that however  
70 the session is presented to the SW writer the writer must take into account which  
71 commands are being time stamped and how to manage the log etc. So accepting a  
72 mechanism that is easy for the HW developer and having the SW manage the  
73 interface is a sufficient direction.

- 74 When returning time information do we return the entire time structure or just the time  
75 and have the caller obtain all the information with a GetCap call?
- 76 All time returns will use the entire structure with all the details.
- 77 Do we want to return a real clock value or a value with some additional bits (like a  
78 monotonic value with a time value)?
- 79 Add a count value into the time structure.
- 80 Do we need NTP or is SNTP sufficient?
- 81 The TPM will not run the time protocol itself. What the TPM will do is accept a value  
82 from outside software and a hash of the protocols that produced the value. This  
83 allows the platform to use whatever they want to set the value from secure time to  
84 the local PC clock.
- 85 Can an owner destroy a TPM by issuing repeated CreateCounter commands?
- 86 A TPM may place a throttle on this command to avoid burn issues. It MUST not be  
87 possible to burn out the TPM counter under normal operating conditions. The  
88 CreateCounter command is limited to only once per successful  
89 TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR).
- 90 This answer is now somewhat moot as the command to createcounter is now owner  
91 authorized. This allows the owner to decide when to authorize the counter creation.  
92 As there are only 4 counters available it is not an issue with having the owner  
93 continue to authorize counters.
- 94 What happens to a transport session (log etc.) on an S3?
- 95 Should these be the same as the authorization sessions? The saving of a transport  
96 session across S3 is not a security concern but is a memory concern. The TPM MUST  
97 clear the transport session on TPM\_Startup(CLEAR) and MAY clear the session on  
98 TPM\_Startup(any).
- 99 While you can't increment or create a new counter after startup can you read a counter  
100 other than the active one?
- 101 You may read other counters
- 102 When we audit a command that is not authorized should we hash the parameters and  
103 provide that as part of the audit event, currently they are set to null.
- 104 We should hash parameters of non-authorized commands
- 105 There is a fundamental problem with the encryption of commands in the transport and  
106 auditing. If we cover a command we have no way to audit, if we show the command then  
107 it isn't protected. Can we expose the command (ordinal) and not the parameters?
- 108 If the owner has requested that a function be audited then the execute transport return  
109 will include sufficient information to produce the audit entry.
- 110 How to set the time in the audit structure and tell the log what is going on.
- 111 The time in the audit structure is set to nulls except when audit occurs as part of a  
112 transport session. In that case the audit command is set from the time value in the  
113 TPM.

- 114 Is there a limit to the number of locality modifiers?
- 115 Yes, the TPM need only support a maximum of 4 modifiers. The definition of the  
116 modifiers is always a platform specific issue.
- 117 How do we evict various resources?
- 118 There are numerous eviction routines in the current spec. We will deprecate the various  
119 types and move to TPM\_Flushxxx for all resource types.
- 120 Can you flush a saved context?
- 121 Yes, you must be able to invalidate saved contexts. This would be done by making sure  
122 that the TPM could not load any saved context.
- 123 What is the value of maintaining the clock value when the time is not incrementing? Can  
124 this be due to the fact that the time is now known to be at least after the indicated time?
- 125 Moot point now as we don't keep the clock value at
- 126 Should we change the current structures and add the tag?
- 127 TODO
- 128 Can we have a bank of bits (change bit locality) for each of the 4 levels of locality?
- 129 Now
- 130 How do we find out what sessions are active? Do we care?
- 131 I would say yes we care and we should use the same mechanism that we do for the keys.  
132 A GetCap that will return the handles.
- 133 Can we limit the transport sessions to only one?
- 134 No, we should have as a minimum 2 sessions. One gets into deadlocks and such so the  
135 minimum should be 2.
- 136 Does the TPM need to keep the audit structure or can it simply keep a hash?
- 137 The TPM just keeps the audit digest and no other information.
- 138 What happens to an OSAP session if the key associated with it is taken off chip with a  
139 "SaveContext"? What happens if the key saveContext occurs after an OSAP auth context  
140 that is already off chip? How do you later connect the key to the auth session (without  
141 having to store all sorts of things on chip)? Are we really honestly convinced that we've  
142 thought of all the possible ramifications of saving and restoring auth sessions? And is it  
143 really true that all the things we say about a saved auth session do/should apply to a  
144 saved key (which is to say is there really a single loadContext command and a single  
145 context structure)?
- 146 Saved context a reliable indication of the linkage between the OSAP and the key. When  
147 saving save auth then key, on load key then auth. Auth session checks for the key  
148 and if not found fails.
- 149 Why is addNonce an output of 16.5 loadContext?
- 150 If it's wrong, it's a little late to find out now - why not have it as an input and have the  
151 TPM return an error if the encrypted addNonce doesn't match the input? The thought  
152 was that the nonce area might not be a nonce but was information that the caller

- 153 could put in. If they use it as a nonce fine, but they could also use it as a label or  
154 sequence number or ... any value the caller wanted
- 155 Is there a memory endurance problem with contextNonceSession?  
156 contextNonceSession does not have to be saved across S3 states so there is no  
157 endurance problem.
- 158 Is there a memory endurance problem with contextNonceKey?  
159 contextNonceKey only changes on TPM\_Startup(ST\_Clear) so it's endurance is the same  
160 as a PCR.
- 161 The debate continues about restoring a resource's handle during TPM\_LoadContext.  
162 Debate ends by having the load context be informed of what the loaders opinion is about  
163 the handle. The requestor can indicate that it wishes the same handle and if the TPM  
164 can perform that task it does, if it cannot then the load fails.
- 165 Interesting attack is now available with the new audit close flag on get audit signed. Anyone  
166 with access to a signing key can close the audit log. The only requirement on the  
167 command is that the key be authorized. While there is no loss of information (as the  
168 attacker can always destroy the external log) does the closing of a log make things look  
169 different. This does enable a burn out attack. The ability to closeAudit enables a new  
170 DenialOfService attack.
- 171 Resolution: The TPM Owner owns the audit process, so the TPM Owner should have  
172 exclusive control over closeAudit. Hence the signing key used to closeAudit must be  
173 an AIK. Note that the owner can choose to give this AIK's AuthData value to the OS,  
174 so that the OS can automatically close an audit session during platform power down.  
175 But such operations are outside this specification.
- 176 Should we keep the E function in the tick counter?  
177 From Graeme, I would prefer to see these calculations deleted. The calculation starts  
178 with one assertion and derives a contradictory assertion. Generally, there seems little  
179 value in trying to derive an equality relationship when nothing is known about the  
180 path to and from the Time Authority.
- 181 What is the difference between DIR\_Quote and DirReadSigned?  
182 Appears to be none so DIR\_Quote deleted
- 183 The tickRate parameter associates tick with seconds and has no way to indicate that the  
184 rate is greater than one second. Is this OK?  
185 Do we need to allow for tick rates that are slower than once per second. We report in  
186 nanoseconds.
- 187 The TPM MUST support a minimum of 2 authorization sessions. Where do we put this  
188 requirement in the spec?
- 189 Can we find a use for the DIR and BIT areas for locality 0?  
190 They have no protections so in many ways they are just extra. We leave this as it is as  
191 locality 0 may mean something else on a platform other than a PC.
- 192 How do we send back the transport log information on each execute transport?

193 It is 64 bytes in length and would make things very difficult to include on every  
194 command. Change wrappedaudit to be input params, add output params and the  
195 caller has all information necessary to create the structure to add into the digest.

196 The transport log structure is a single structure used both for input and output with the  
197 only difference being the setting of ticks to 0 on input and a real value on output, do we  
198 need two structures.

199 I believe that a single structure is fine

200 For TPM\_Startup(ST\_Clear) I added that all keys would be flushed. Is this right?

201 Yes

202 Why have 2 auths for release transport signed? It is an easy attack to simply kill the  
203 session.

204 The reason is that an attacker can close the session and get a signature of the session  
205 log. We are currently not sure of the level of this attack but by having the creator of  
206 the session authorize the signing of the log it is completely avoided.

207 19.3 Action 3 (startup/state) doesn't reference the situation where there is no saved state.  
208 My presumption is that you can still run startup/clear, but maybe you have to do a  
209 hardware reset?

210 DWG I don't think so. This could be an attack and a way to get the wrong PCR values  
211 into the system. The BIOS is taking one path and may not set PCR values. Hence the  
212 response is to go into failed selftest mode.

213 What happens to a transport session if a command clears the TPM like revokeTrust

214 This is fine. The transport session is not complete but the session protected the  
215 information till the command that changed the TPM. It is impossible to get a log from  
216 the session or to sign the session but that is what the caller wanted.

## 217 2.2.1 Delegation Questions

218 Is loading the table by untrusted process ok? Does this cause a problem when the new table  
219 is loaded and permissions change?

220 Yes, the fill table can be done by any process. A TPM Owner wishing to validate the table  
221 can perform the operations necessary to gain assurance of the table entries.

222 Are the permissions for a table row sensitive?

223 Currently we believe not but there are some attack models that knowing the permissions  
224 makes the start of the attack easier. It does not make the success of the attack any  
225 easier. Example if I know that a single process is the only process in the table that  
226 has the CreateAIK capability then the attacker only attempts to break into the single  
227 process and not all others.

228 What software is in use to modify the table?

229 The table can be updated by any software or process given the capability to manage the  
230 table. Three likely sources of the software would be a BIOS process, an applet of a  
231 trusted process and a standalone self-booting (from CD-ROM) management  
232 application.

233 Who holds the TPM Owner password?

- 234        There is no change to the holding of the TPM Owner token. The permissions do allow the  
235            creation of an application that sets the TPM Owner token to a random value and  
236            then seals the value to the application.
- 237    How are these changes created such that there is minimal change to the current TPM?  
238        This works by using the current authorization process and only making changes in the  
239            authorization and not for each and every command.
- 240    What about S3 and other events?  
241        Permissions, once granted, are non-volatile.
- 242    The permission bit to changeOwnerAuth (bit 11) gives rise to the functionality that the SW  
243        that has this bit can control the TPM completely. This includes removing control from  
244        the TPM Owner as the TPM Owner value will now be a random value only known to SW.  
245        There are use models where this is good and bad, do we want this functionality?
- 246    Pros and cons of physical enable table when TPM Owner is present – Pro physically present  
247        user can make SW play fair. Con – physically present user can override the desires of a  
248        TPM Owner.
- 249    Do we need to reset TPM\_PERMISSION\_KEY at some time ?  
250        We know that the key is NOT reset on TPM\_ClearOwner.
- 251    What is the meaning of using permission table in an OIAP and OSAP mode?  
252        Delegate table can be used in either OIAP or OSAP mode.
- 253    Can you grant permissions without assigning the permissions to a specific process?  
254        Yes, do a SetRow with a PCR\_SELECTION of null and the permissions are available to  
255            any process.
- 256    Do we need a ClearTableOwner?  
257        I would assert that we do not need this command. The TPM Owner can perform SetRow  
258            with NULLS four times and creates the exact same thing. Not having this command  
259            lowers the number of ordinals the TPM is required to support.
- 260    There are some issues with the currently defined behavior of familyID and the  
261        verificationCount.  
262        Talked to David for 30 mins. We decided that maxFamilyID is set to zero at  
263            manufacture, and incremented for every FamTable\_SetRow  
264        It is the responsibility of DelTable\_SetRow to set the appropriate familyID  
265        DelTable\_SetRow fails if the provided familyID is not active and present somewhere in  
266            the FamTable  
267        FillTable works differently. It effectively resets the family table (invalidating all active  
268            rows) and sets up as many rows as are needed based on the number of families  
269            specified in FillTable  
270        This still needs a bit of work. Presumably the caller of FillTable uses a “fake” familyID,  
271            and this is changed to the actual familyID when the fill happens  
272    There are some issues with the verificationCount.

273 Uber-issue. If none of the rows in the table are allowed to create other rows and export  
274 them, then the “sign” of the table is meaningful

275 If one of the rows is allowed to create and export new rows, is there any real meaning to  
276 “the current set of exported rows?” (i.e. SW can just up and make new rows).

277 Should section 4.4, TPM\_DelTable\_ClearTable), section 4.5 (TPM\_DelTable\_SetEnable), and  
278 section 4.7 (TPM\_DelTable\_Set\_Admin) all say “there must be UNAMBIGUOUS evidence  
279 of the presence of physical access...” Is this okay?

280 Answer: No, group agreed to change UNAMBIGUOUS to BEST EFFORT in all three  
281 sections.

282 Is FamilyID a sensitive value?

283 If so, why? Agreement: FamilyID is not a sensitive value.

284 Should TPM\_TakeOwnership be included in permissions bits (see bit 12 in section 3.1)?

285 Enables a better administrative monitor and may enable user to take ownership easier.  
286 Agreement leave it in and change informative comments to reflect the reasons.

287 [From the TPM\_DelTable\_SetRow command informative comments]: Note that there are two  
288 types of rights: family rights (you can either edit your family’s rows or grab new rows)  
289 and administrative rights.

290 This is really just an editor’s note, not a question to be resolved.

291 [From the TPM\_DelTable\_ExportRow command informational comments]:

292 Does not effect content of exported row left behind in the table;

293 Valid for all rows in the table;

294 Does not need to be OwnerAuth’d;

295 Family Rights are that family can only export a row from rows 0-3 if row belongs to the  
296 family, but rows 4 and upwards can be exported by any Trusted Process, without any  
297 family checking being done. This is really just an editor’s note, not a question to be  
298 resolved.

299 When a Family Table row is set, the verificationCount is set to 1, make sure that is  
300 consistently used in all other command actions.

301 Done.

302 SetEnable and SetEnableOwner enable and disable all rows in a table, not just the rows  
303 belong to the family of the process that used the SetEnable and/or SetEnableOwner  
304 commands. This is also true for SetAdmin and SetAdminOwner. Can anybody come up  
305 with a use scenario where that causes any problems?

306 In command actions where the TPM must walk the delegation table looking for a  
307 configuration that matches the command input parameters (PCRinfo and/or  
308 authValues) and there are rows in the table with duplicate values, what does the TPM  
309 do? Is there any reason not to use the rule “the TPM starts walking the table starting  
310 with the first row and use the first row it finds with matching values”?

311 Answer to this question may mean change to pseudo code in section 2.3, Using the  
312 AuthData Value, which currently shows the TPM walking the delegation table,  
313 starting with the first row, and using the first row it finds with matching values.

- 314 What familyID value signals a family table row that is not in use/contains invalid values?  
315 To get consistency in all the command Actions that use this, that FamilyID value has  
316 been edited in all places to be NULL, instead of 0. Yes, FamilyID value of NULL  
317 signals a family table row that is not in use or contains invalid values.
- 318 From section 2.4, Delegate Table Fill and Enablement: “The changing of a TPM Owner does  
319 not automatically clear the delegate table. Changing a TPM Owner does disable all  
320 current delegations, including exported rows, and requires the new TPM Owner to re-  
321 enable the delegations in the table. The table entry values like trusted process  
322 identification and delegations to that process are not effected by a change in owner. THE  
323 AUTHDATA VALUES DO NOT SURVIVE THE OWNERSHIP CHANGE.” Question: If this is  
324 true, no delegations work after a change of owner. How does the new owner set new  
325 AuthData values?
- 326 The simple way of handling this is to get AdminMonitor to own backing up delegations at  
327 first owner install and then be run by new owner, and AdminMonitor uses FillTable,  
328 to handle “Owner migration.” Or, for another use option, is for second owner to pick-  
329 up PCR-ID’s and delegations bits from previous owner – what is the most straight-  
330 forward way to do this?
- 331 In section 3.1 (Delegate Definitions bit map table), several commands that do not require  
332 owner authorization are in the table and can be delegated: TPM\_SetTempDeactivated (bit  
333 15), TPM\_ReadPubek (bit 7), and TPM\_LoadManuMaintPub (bit 3), Why?
- 334 In section 3.3 it is stated, “The Family ID resets to NULL on each change of TPM Owner.”  
335 This invalidates all delegations. Is this what we want?
- 336 You don’t have to blow away FamilyID to blow away the blobs, because key is gone. So  
337 this is not required – can eliminate these actions.
- 338 In section 3.12, why is TPM\_DELEGATE\_LABEL included in the table?
- 339 In section 4.2 (TPM\_DelTable\_FillTable), is it okay to delete requirement that delegate table  
340 be empty? Also, in Action 14, now that we have both persistent and volatile tableAdmin  
341 flags, should this command set volatile tableAdmin flag to FALSE upon completion?
- 342 The delegate table does not need to be empty to use the TPM\_DelTable\_FillTable  
343 command, Also, a paragraph has been added to Informative comment for  
344 TPM\_DelTable\_FillTable that points out usefulness of immediately following  
345 TPM\_DelTable\_FillTable with TPM\_Delegate\_TempSetAdmin, to stop table  
346 administration in the current boot cycle.
- 347 In section 4.15 (TPM\_FamTable\_IncrementCount), why does this command require  
348 TPMOwner authorization, as currently documented in section 4.15?
- 349 IncrementCount is gated by tableAdmin, which seems sufficient, and use of ownerauth  
350 makes it difficult to automatically verify a table using a CDROM.
- 351 In section 4.3 (TPM\_DelTable\_FillTableOwner), in the Action 3d, use OTP[80] = MFG(x1) in  
352 place of oneTimePad[n] = SHA1(x1 || seed[n]))?,  
353 yes.
- 354 In section 4.9 (TPM\_DelTable\_SetRow), is invalidateRow input parameter really needed?  
355 It is only used in action 5. Couldn’t action 5 simply read “Set N1 -> familyID = NULL”?

- 356 There is no easy way to generate a blob that can be used to delegate migration authority for  
357 a user key.
- 358 This is because the TPM does not store the migration authority on the chip as the  
359 migration command involves an encrypted key, not a loaded one. One could invent a  
360 'CreateMigrationDelegationBlob' that took the encrypted key as input and generated  
361 the encrypted delegation blob as output, but it would not be pretty. Sorry Dave .
- 362 If a delegate row in NV memory (nominally 4 rows) is to refer to a user key (instead of owner  
363 auth), then it needs to include a hash of the public key. It could be that the NV table is  
364 restricted to owner auth delegations, this would save 80 bytes of NV store and also  
365 simplify the LoadBlob command.
- 366 Maybe would simplify other things. I would definitely NOT permit user keys in the table  
367 to be run with the legacy OSAP and OIAP ordinals.
- 368 A few more GetCapability values are also required, the usual constants that we discussed  
369 and also the two readTable caps.
- 370 TBD Verify that Delegate Table Management commands (see section 2.8) cover all the  
371 functionality of obsolete or updated commands.
- 372 Redefine bits 16 and above in Delegation Definitions table (section 3.1). In particular, can  
373 new command set (with TPM\_FAMILY\_OPERATION options as defined in section 3.20) be  
374 delegated individually and appropriately. Also, how many user key authorized  
375 commands will be delegated?
- 376 Is new TPM\_FAMILY\_FLAGS field of family table (defined in section 3.5) sensitive data?
- 377 DSAP informative comment needs to be completed (section 4.1). In particular, does the  
378 statement "The DSAP command works like OSAP except it takes an encrypted blob - an  
379 encrypted delegate table row -- as input" sufficient? Or do some particular differences  
380 between DSAP and OSAP have to be pointed out in this informative comment??
- 381 The TPM\_Delegate\_LoadBlob[Owner] commands cannot be used to load key delegation blobs  
382 into the TPM. Is another ordinal required to do that?
- 383 Is it okay for TPM\_Delegate\_LoadBlob[Owner] commands to ignore enable/disable  
384 use/admin flags in family table rows?
- 385 Is it wise to delegate TPM\_DelTable\_ConvertBlob command (defined in section 4.11)? Does  
386 current definition of this command support section 2.7 scenarios?
- 387 Is there a privacy problem with DelTable\_ReadRow since the contents may not be identical  
388 from TPM to TPM?
- 389 Are DSAP sessions being pooled with the other sessions? if so, can one save \load them by  
390 context functions? if not, then there should be a restriction in saveContext.
- 391 DSAP are "normal" authorization sessions and would save/load with OIAP and OSAP  
392 sessions

## 393 2.2.2 NV Questions

- 394 You would set this by using a new ordinal that is unauthorized and only turns the flag on to  
395 lock everything. Yet another ordinal? Do we need it? Is this an important functionality  
396 for the uses we see?

397 Yes this allows us to have "close" to writeonce functionality. What the functionality  
398 would be is that the RTM would assure that the proper information is present in the  
399 TPM and then "lock" the area. One could create this functionality by having the RTM  
400 change the authorization each time but then you would need to eat more NV store so  
401 save the sealed AuthData value. I think that is easier to have an ordinal than eat the  
402 NV space and require a much more complex programming model.

403 Is it OK to have an element partially written?

404 Given that we have chunks there has to be a mechanism to allow partial writes.

405 If an element is partially written, how does a caller know that more needs to be written?

406 I would say the use model that provides the ability to write - read, in a loop is just not  
407 supported. Get it all written and then do the read.

408 Usage of the lock bit: as you wrote, the RTM would assure that the proper information is  
409 present in the TPM and then "lock" the area. so why in action #4 we should also check  
410 bWritten when the lock bit is set? should be as action #3b of TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace, if  
411 lock is set - return error

412 [Grawrock, David] Not quite, the use model I was trying to create was the one where the  
413 TPM was locked and the user was attempting to add a new area. If the locked bit  
414 doesn't allow for writing once to a new area, one must reboot to perform the write  
415 and also tell the RTM what the value to write must be. So this allows the creator of  
416 an area to write it once and then it flows with the locked bit.

417 Can you delete a NV value with only physical presence?

418 [Grawrock, David] You can't delete with physical presence, you must use owner  
419 authorization. This I think is a reasonable restriction to avoid burn problems.

420 Why is there no check on the writes for a TPM Owner?

421 The check for an owner occurred during the TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace. It is imperative that  
422 the TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace set in place the appropriate restrictions to limit the  
423 potential for attacks on the NV storage area.

424 Description of maxNVBufSize is confusing to me. Why is this value related to the input size?  
425 And since there is no longer any 'written' bits, why is there a maximum area size at all?

426 [Grawrock, David] This is a fixed size and set by the TPM manufacturer. I would see  
427 values like the input buffer, transport sessions etc all coming up with the max size  
428 the TPM can handle. This does NOT indicate what is available on the TPM right now.  
429 The TPM could have 4k of space but max size would be 782 and would always report  
430 that number. If the available space fell to 20 bytes this value would still be 782.

431 If the storage area is an opaque area to the TPM (as described), then how does the TPM  
432 know what PCR registers have been used to seal a blob?

433 The VALUES of the area are opaque, the attributes to control access are not. So if the  
434 attributes indicate that PCR restrictions are in place the TPM keeps those PCR values  
435 as part of the index attributes. This in reality seals the value as there is no need for  
436 tpmProof since the value never leaves the TPM.

## 437 3. Protection

### 438 3.1 Introduction

#### 439 **Start of informative comment**

440 The Protection Profile in the Conformance part of the specification defines the threats that  
441 are resisted by a platform. This section, “Protection,” describes the properties of selected  
442 capabilities and selected data locations within a TPM that has a Protection Profile and has  
443 not been modified by physical means.

444 This section introduces the concept of protected capabilities and the concept of shielded  
445 locations for data. The ordinal set defined in part II and III is the set of protected  
446 capabilities. The data structures in part II define the shielded locations.

447 • A protected capability is one whose correct operation is necessary in order for the  
448 operation of the TCG Subsystem to be trusted.

449 • A shielded location is an area where data is protected against interference and prying,  
450 independent of its form.

451 This specification uses the concept of protected capabilities so as to distinguish platform  
452 capabilities that must be trustworthy. Trust in the TPM depends critically on the protected  
453 capabilities. Platform capabilities that are not protected capabilities must (of course) work  
454 properly if the TCG Subsystem is to function properly.

455 This specification uses the concept of shielded locations, rather than the concept of  
456 “shielded data.” While the concept of shielded data is intuitive, it is extraordinarily difficult  
457 to define because of the imprecise meaning of the word “data.” For example, consider data  
458 that is produced in a safe location and then moved into ordinary storage. It is the same data  
459 in both locations, but in one it is shielded data and in the other it is not. Also, data may not  
460 always exist in the same form. For example, it may exist as vulnerable plaintext, but also  
461 may sometimes be transformed into a logically protected form. This data continues to exist,  
462 but doesn't always need to be shielded data - the vulnerable form needs to be shielded data,  
463 but the logically protected form does not. If a specific form of data requires protection  
464 against interference or prying, it is therefore necessary to say “if the data-D exists, it must  
465 exist only in a shielded location.” A more concise expression is “the data-D must be extant  
466 only in a shielded location.”

467 Hence, if trust in the TCG Subsystem depends critically on access to certain data, that data  
468 should be extant only in a shielded location and accessible only to protected capabilities.  
469 When not in use, such data could be erased after conversion (using a protected capability)  
470 into another data structure. Unless the other data structure was defined as one that must  
471 be held in a shielded location, it need not be held in a shielded location.

#### 472 **End of informative comment**

473 1. The data structures described in part II of the TPM specifications **MUST NOT** be  
474 instantiated in a TPM, except as data in TPM-shielded-locations.

475 2. The ordinal set defined in part II and III of the TPM specifications **MUST NOT** be  
476 instantiated in a TPM, except as TPM-protected-capabilities.

477 3. Functions **MUST NOT** be instantiated in a TPM as TPM-protected-capabilities if they do  
478 not appear in the ordinal set defined in part II and III of the TPM specifications.

## 479 **3.2 Threat**

### 480 **Start of informative comment**

481 This section, “Threat,” defines the scope of the threats that must be considered when  
482 considering whether a platform facilitates subversion of capabilities and data in a platform.

483 The design and implementation of a platform determines the extent to which the platform  
484 facilitates subversion of capabilities and data within that platform. It is necessary to define  
485 the attacks that must be resisted by TPM-shielded locations and TPM-protected capabilities  
486 in that platform.

487 The TCG specifications define all attacks that are resisted by the TPM. These attacks must  
488 be considered when determining whether the integrity of TPM-protected capabilities and  
489 data in TPM-shielded locations can be damaged. These attacks must be considered when  
490 determining whether there is a backdoor method of obtaining access to TPM-protected  
491 capabilities and data in TPM-shielded locations. These attacks must be considered when  
492 determining whether TPM-protected capabilities have undesirable side effects.

### 493 **End of informative comment**

- 494 1. For the purposes of the “Protection” section of the specification, the threats that MUST  
495 be considered when determining whether the TPM facilitates subversion of TPM-  
496 protected-capabilities or data in TPM-shielded-locations SHALL include
- 497 a. The methods inherent in physical attacks that fail if the TPM complies with the  
498 “physical protection” requirements specified by TCG
  - 499 b. All methods that require execution of instructions in a computing engine in the  
500 platform

## 501 **3.3 Protection of functions**

### 502 **Start of informative comment**

503 A TPM-protected-capability must be used to modify TPM-protected capabilities. Other  
504 methods must not be allowed to modify TPM-protected capabilities. Otherwise, the integrity  
505 of TPM-protected capabilities is unknown.

### 506 **End of informative comment**

- 507 1. A TPM SHALL NOT facilitate the alteration of TPM-protected-capabilities, except by TPM-  
508 protected capabilities.

## 509 **3.4 Protection of information**

### 510 **Start of informative comment**

511 TPM-protected capabilities must provide the only means from outside the TPM to access  
512 information represented by data in TPM-shielded-locations. Otherwise, a rogue can reveal  
513 data in TPM-shielded-locations, or create a derivative of data from TPM-shielded-locations  
514 (in a way that maintains some or all of the information content of the data) and reveal the  
515 derivative.

### 516 **End of informative comment**

- 517 1. A TPM SHALL NOT export data that is dependent upon data structures described in part  
518 II of the TPM specifications, other than via a TPM-Protected-Capability.

### 519 **3.5 Side effects**

#### 520 **Start of informative comment**

521 An implementation of a TPM-protected capability must not disclose the contents of TPM-  
522 shielded locations. The only exceptions are when such disclosure is inherent in the  
523 definition of the capability or in the methods used by the capability. For example, a  
524 capability might be designed specifically to reveal hidden data or might use cryptography  
525 and hence always be vulnerable to cryptanalysis. In such cases, some disclosure or risk of  
526 disclosure is inherent and cannot be avoided. Other forms of disclosure (by side effects, for  
527 example) must always be avoided.

#### 528 **End of informative comment**

- 529 1. The implementation of a TPM-protected-capability in a TPM SHALL NOT facilitate the  
530 disclosure or the exposure of information represented by data in TPM-shielded-  
531 locations, except by means unavoidably inherent in the TPM definition.

### 532 **3.6 Exceptions and clarifications**

#### 533 **Start of informative comment**

534 These exceptions to the blanket statements in the generic “protection” requirements (above)  
535 are fully compatible with the intended effect of those statements. These exceptions affect  
536 TCG-data that is available as plain-text outside the TPM and TCG-data that can be used  
537 without violating security or privacy. These exceptions are valuable because they approve  
538 use of TPM resources by vendor -specific commands in particular circumstances.

539 These clarifications to the blanket statements of the generic “protection” requirements  
540 (above) do not materially change the effect of those statements, but serve to approve specific  
541 legitimate interpretations of the requirements.

#### 542 **End of informative comment**

- 543 1. A Shielded Location is a place (memory, register, etc.) where data is protected against  
544 interference and exposure, independent of its form
- 545 2. A TPM-Protected-Capability is an operation defined in and restricted to those identified  
546 in part II and III of the TPM specifications.
- 547 3. A vendor specific command or capability MAY use the standard TCG owner/operator  
548 authorization mechanism
- 549 4. A vendor specific command or capability MAY utilize a TPM\_PUBKEY structure stored on  
550 the TPM so long as the usage of that TPM\_PUBKEY structure is authorized using the  
551 standard TCG authorization mechanism.
- 552 5. A vendor specific command or capability MAY use a sequence of standard TCG  
553 commands. The command MUST propagate the locality used for the call to the used  
554 TCG commands or capabilities, or set locality to 0.
- 555 6. A vendor specific command or capability that takes advantage of exceptions and  
556 clarifications to the “protection” requirements MUST be defined as part of the security

- 557 target of the TPM. Such a vendor specific command or capability MUST be evaluated to  
558 meet the Platform Specific TPM and System Security Targets.
- 559 7. If a TPM employs vendor-specific cipher-text that is protected against subversion to the  
560 same or greater extent as internal TPM-resources stored outside the TPM with TCG-  
561 defined methods, that vendor-specific cipher-text does not necessarily require protection  
562 from physical attack. If a TPM location stores only vendor-specific cipher-text that does  
563 not require protection from physical attack, that location can be ignored when  
564 determining whether the TPM complies with the "physical protection" requirements  
565 specified by TCG.

566 **4. TPM Architecture**

567 **4.1 Interoperability**

568 **Start of informative comment**

569 The TPM must support a minimum set of algorithms and operations to meet TCG  
570 specifications.

571 Algorithms

572 RSA, SHA-1, HMAC

573 The algorithms and protocols are the minimum that the TPM must support. Additional  
574 algorithms and protocols may be available to the TPM. All algorithms and protocols  
575 available in the TPM must be included in the TPM and platform credential.

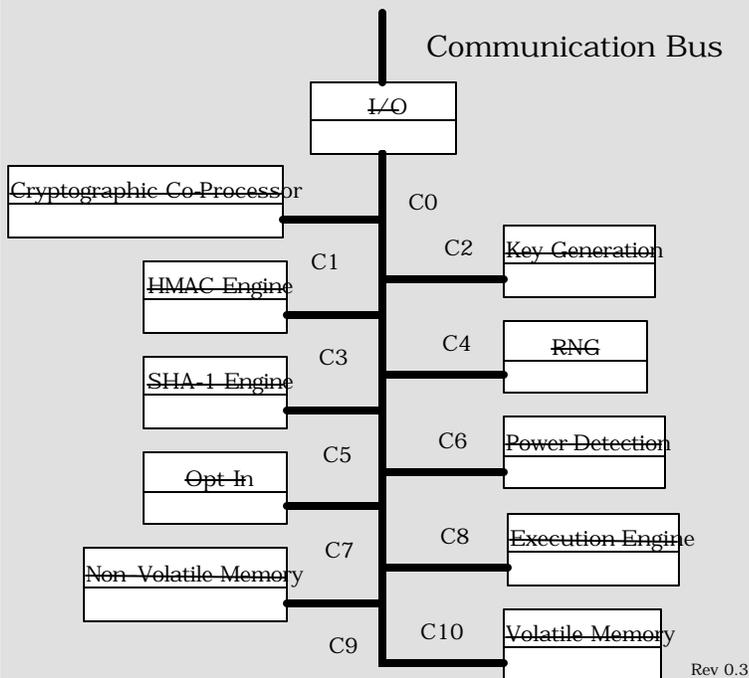
576 The reason to specify these algorithms is two fold. The first is to know and understand the  
577 security properties of selected algorithms; identify appropriate key sizes and ensure  
578 appropriate use in protocols. The second reason is to define a base level of algorithms for  
579 interoperability.

580 **End of informative comment**

581 **4.2 Components**

582 **Start of informative comment**

583 The following is a block diagram Figure 4:a shows the major components of a TPM.



584  
585 Figure 4:a - TPM Component Architecture

586 **End of informative comment**

## 587 4.2.1 Input and Output

### 588 **Start of informative comment**

589 The I/O component, Figure 4:a C0, manages information flow over the communications  
590 bus. It performs protocol encoding/decoding suitable for communication over external and  
591 internal buses. It routes messages to appropriate components. The I/O component enforces  
592 access policies associated with the Opt-In component as well as other TPM functions  
593 requiring access control.

594 The main specification does not require a specific I/O bus. Issues around a particular I/O  
595 bus are the purview of a platform specific specification.

### 596 **End of informative comment**

- 597 1. The number of incoming operand parameter bytes must exactly match the  
598 requirements of the command ordinal. If the command contains more or fewer bytes  
599 than required, the TPM MUST return TPM\_BAD\_PARAMETER.

## 600 4.2.2 Cryptographic Co-Processor

### 601 **Start of informative comment**

602 The cryptographic co-processor, Figure 4:a C1, implements cryptographic operations within  
603 the TPM. The TPM employs conventional cryptographic operations in conventional ways.  
604 Those operations include the following:

605 Asymmetric key generation (RSA)

606 Asymmetric encryption/decryption (RSA)

607 Hashing (SHA-1)

608 Random number generation (RNG)

609 The TPM uses these capabilities to perform generation of random data, generation of  
610 asymmetric keys, signing and confidentiality of stored data.

611 The TPM may symmetric encryption for internal TPM use but does not expose any  
612 symmetric algorithm functions to general users of the TPM.

613 The TPM may implement additional asymmetric algorithms. TPM devices that implement  
614 different algorithms may have different algorithms perform the signing and wrapping.

### 615 **End of informative comment**

- 616 1. The TPM MAY implement other asymmetric algorithms such as DSA or elliptic curve.
  - 617 a. These algorithms may be in use for wrapping, signatures and other operations. There  
618 is no guarantee that these keys can migrate to other TPM devices or that other TPM  
619 devices will accept signatures from these additional algorithms.
- 620 2. All Storage keys MUST be of strength equivalent to a 2048 bits RSA key or greater. The  
621 TPM SHALL NOT load a Storage key whose strength less than that of a 2048 bits RSA  
622 key.
- 623 3. All AIK MUST be of strength equivalent to a 2048 bits RSA key, or greater.

### 624 4.2.2.1 RSA Engine

#### 625 **Start of informative comment**

626 The RSA asymmetric algorithm is used for digital signatures and for encryption.

627 For RSA keys the PKCS #1 standard provides the implementation details for digital  
628 signature, encryption and data formats.

629 There is no requirement concerning how the RSA algorithm is to be implemented. TPM  
630 manufacturers may use Chinese Remainder Theorem (CRT) implementations or any other  
631 method. Designers should review P1363 for guidance on RSA implementations.

#### 632 **End of informative comment**

- 633 1. The TPM MUST support RSA.
- 634 2. The TPM MUST use the RSA algorithm for encryption and digital signatures.
- 635 3. The TPM MUST support key sizes of 512, 768, 1024, and 2048 bits. The TPM MAY  
636 support other key sizes.
  - 637 a. The minimum RECOMMENDED key size is 2048 bits.
- 638 4. The RSA public exponent MUST be  $e$ , where  $e = 2^{16} + 1$ .
- 639 5. TPM devices that use CRT as the RSA implementation MUST provide protection and  
640 detection of failures during the CRT process to avoid attacks on the private key.

### 641 4.2.2.2 Signature Operations

#### 642 **Start of informative comment**

643 The TPM performs signatures on both internal items and on requested external blobs. The  
644 rules for signatures apply to both operations.

#### 645 **End of informative comment**

- 646 1. The TPM MUST use the RSA algorithm for signature operations where signed data is  
647 verified by entities other than the TPM that performed the sign operation.
- 648 2. The TPM MAY use other asymmetric algorithms for signatures; however, there is no  
649 requirement that other TPM devices either accept or verify those signatures.
- 650 3. The TPM MUST use P1363 for the format and design of the signature output.

### 651 4.2.2.3 Symmetric Encryption Engine

#### 652 **Start of informative comment**

653 The TPM uses symmetric encryption to encrypt authentication information, provide  
654 confidentiality in transport sessions and provide internal encryption of blobs stored off of  
655 the TPM.

656 For authentication and transport sessions, the mandatory mechanism is a Vernam one-  
657 time-pad with XOR. The mechanism to generate the one-time-pad is MGF1 and the nonces  
658 from the session protocol. When encrypting authorization data, the authorization data and  
659 the nonces are the same size, 20 bytes, so a direct XOR is possible.

660 For transport sessions the size of data is larger than the nonces so there needs to be a  
661 mechanism to expand the entropy to the size of the data. The mechanism to expand the  
662 entropy is the MGF1 function from PKCS#1. This function provides a known mechanism  
663 that does not lower the entropy of the nonces.

664 AES may be supported as an alternate symmetric key encryption algorithm.

665 Internal protection of information can use any symmetric algorithm that the TPM designer  
666 feels provides the proper level of protection.

667 The TPM does not expose any of the symmetric operations for general message encryption.

668 **End of informative comment**

#### 669 **4.2.2.4 Using Keys**

##### 670 **Start of Informative comments:**

671 Keys can be symmetric or asymmetric.

672 As the TPM does not have an exposed symmetric algorithm, the TPM is only a generator,  
673 storage device and protector of symmetric keys. Generation of the symmetric key would use  
674 the TPM RNG. Storage and protection would be provided by the BIND and SEAL capabilities  
675 of the TPM. If the caller wants to ensure that the release of a symmetric key is not exposed  
676 after UNBIND/UNSEAL on delivery to the caller, the caller should use a transport session  
677 with confidentiality set.

678 For asymmetric algorithms, the TPM generates and operates on RSA keys. The keys can be  
679 held only by the TPM or in conjunction with the caller of the TPM. If the private portion of a  
680 key is in use outside of the TPM it is the responsibility of the caller and user of that key to  
681 ensure the protections of the key.

682 The TPM has provisions to indicate if a key is held exclusively for the TPM or can be shared  
683 with entities off of the TPM.

684 **End of informative comments.**

- 685 1. A secret key is a key that is a private asymmetric key or a symmetric key.
- 686 2. Data SHOULD NOT be used as a secret key by a TCG protected capability unless that  
687 data has been extant only in a shielded location.
- 688 3. A key generated by a TCG protected capability SHALL NOT be used as a secret key  
689 unless that key has been extant only in a shielded location.
- 690 4. A secret key obtained by a TCG protected capability from a Protected Storage blob  
691 SHALL be extant only in a shielded location.

#### 692 **4.2.3 Key Generation**

##### 693 **Start of informative comment**

694 The Key Generation component, Figure 4:a C2, creates RSA key pairs and symmetric keys.  
695 TCG places no minimum requirements on key generation times for asymmetric or  
696 symmetric keys.

697 **End of informative comment**

698 **4.2.3.1 Asymmetric – RSA**

699 The TPM MUST generate asymmetric key pairs. The generate function is a protected  
700 capability and the private key is held in a shielded location. The implementation of the  
701 generate function MUST be in accordance with P1363.

702 The prime-number testing for the RSA algorithm MUST use the definitions of P1363. If  
703 additional asymmetric algorithms are available, they MUST use the definitions from P1363  
704 for the underlying basis of the asymmetric key (for example, elliptic curve fitting).

705 **4.2.3.2 Nonce Creation**

706 The creation of all nonce values MUST use the next n bits from the TPM RNG.

707 **4.2.4 HMAC Engine**708 **Start of informative comment**

709 The HMAC engine, Figure 4:a C3, provides two pieces of information to the TPM: proof of  
710 knowledge of the AuthData and proof that the request arriving is authorized and has no  
711 modifications made to the command in transit.

712 The HMAC definition is for the HMAC calculation only. It does not specify the order or  
713 mechanism that transports the data from caller to actual TPM.

714 The creation of the HMAC is order dependent. Each command has specific items that are  
715 portions of the HMAC calculation. The actual calculation starts with the definition from  
716 RFC 2104.

717 RFC 2104 requires the selection of two parameters to properly define the HMAC in use.  
718 These values are the key length and the block size. This specification will use a key length  
719 of 20 bytes and a block size of 64 bytes. These values are known in the RFC as K for the key  
720 length and B as the block size.

721 The basic construct is

722  $H(K \text{ XOR opad}, H(K \text{ XOR ipad}, \text{text}))$

723 where

724 H = the SHA1 hash operation

725 K = the key or the AuthData

726 XOR = the xor operation

727 opad = the byte 0x5C repeated B times

728 B = the block length

729 ipad = the byte 0x36 repeated B times

730 text = the message information and any parameters from the command

731 **End of informative comment**

732 The TPM MUST support the calculation of an HMAC according to RFC 2104.

733 The size of the key (K in RFC 2104) MUST be 20 bytes. The block size (B in RFC 2104)  
734 MUST be 64 bytes.

735 The order of the parameters is critical to the TPM's ability to recreate the HMAC. Not all of  
736 the fields are sent on the wire for each command for instance only one of the nonce values  
737 travels on the wire. Each command interface definition indicates what parameters are  
738 involved in the HMAC calculation.

## 739 4.2.5 Random Number Generator

### 740 **Start of informative comment**

741 The Random Number Generator (RNG) component, Figure 6:a C4 is the source of  
742 randomness in the TPM. The TPM uses these random values for nonces, key generation,  
743 and randomness in signatures.

744 The RNG consists of a state-machine that accepts and mixes unpredictable data and a post-  
745 processor that has a one-way function (e.g. SHA-1). The idea behind the design is that a  
746 TPM can be good source of randomness without having to require a genuine source of  
747 hardware entropy.

748 The state-machine can have a non-volatile state initialized with unpredictable random data  
749 during TPM manufacturing before delivery of the TPM to the customers. The state-machine  
750 can accept, at any time, further (unpredictable) data, or entropy, to salt the random  
751 number. Such data comes from hardware or software sources – for example; from thermal  
752 noise, or by monitoring random keyboard strokes or mouse movements. The RNG requires a  
753 reseeding after each reset of the TPM. A true hardware source of entropy is likely to supply  
754 entropy at a higher baud rate than a software source.

755 When adding entropy to the state-machine the process must ensure that after the addition,  
756 no outside source can gain any visibility into the new state of the state-machine. Neither  
757 the Owner of the TPM, nor the manufacturer of the TPM can deduce the state of the state-  
758 machine after shipment of the TPM. The RNG post-processor condenses the output of the  
759 state-machine into data that has sufficient and uniform entropy. The one-way function  
760 should use more bits of input data than it produces as output.

761 Our definition of the RNG allows implementation of a Pseudo Random Number Generator  
762 (PRNG) algorithm. However, on devices where a hardware source of entropy is available, a  
763 PRNG need not be implemented. This specification refers to both RNG and PRNG  
764 implementations as the RNG mechanism. There is no need to distinguish between the two  
765 at the TCG specification level.

766 The TPM should be able to provide 32 bytes of randomness on each call. Larger requests  
767 may fail with not enough randomness being available.

### 768 **End of informative comment**

- 769 1. The RNG for the TPM will consist of the following components:
  - 770 a. Entropy source and collector
  - 771 b. State register
  - 772 c. Mixing function
- 773 2. The RNG capability is a TPM-protected capability with no access control.
- 774 3. The RNG output may or may not be shielded data. When the data is for internal use by  
775 the TPM (e.g., asymmetric key generation) the data **MUST** be held in a shielded location.  
776 When the data is for use by the TSS or another external caller, the data is not shielded.

## 777 4.2.5.1 Entropy Source and Collector

### 778 **Start of informative comment**

779 The entropy source is the process or processes that provide entropy. These types of sources  
780 could include noise, clock variations, air movement, and other types of events.

781 The entropy collector is the process that collects the entropy, removes bias, and smoothes  
782 the output. The collector differs from the mixing function in that the collector may have  
783 special code to handle any bias or skewing of the raw entropy data. For instance, if the  
784 entropy source has a bias of creating 60 percent 1s and only 40 percent 0s, then the  
785 collector design takes that bias into account before sending the information to the state  
786 register.

### 787 **End of informative comment**

- 788 1. The entropy source **MUST** provide entropy to the state register in a manner that provides  
789 entropy that is not visible to an outside process.
  - 790 a. For compliance purposes, the entropy source **MAY** be outside of the TPM; however,  
791 attention **MUST** be paid to the reporting mechanism.
- 792 2. The entropy source **MUST** provide the information only to the state register.
  - 793 a. The entropy source may provide information that has a bias, so the entropy collector  
794 must remove the bias before updating the state register. The bias removal could use  
795 the mixing function or a function specifically designed to handle the bias of the  
796 entropy source.
  - 797 b. The entropy source can be a single device (such as hardware noise) or a combination  
798 of events (such as disk timings). It is the responsibility of the entropy collector to  
799 update the state register whenever the collector has additional entropy.

## 800 4.2.5.2 State Register

### 801 **Start of informative comment**

802 The state register implementation may use two registers: a non-volatile register rngState  
803 and a volatile register. The TPM loads the volatile register from the non-volatile register on  
804 startup. Each subsequent change to the state register from either the entropy source or the  
805 mixing function affects the volatile state register. The TPM saves the current value of the  
806 volatile state register to the non-volatile register on TPM power-down. The TPM may update  
807 the non-volatile register at any other time. The reasons for using two registers are:

808 To handle an implementation in which the non-volatile register is in a flash device;

809 To avoid overuse of the flash, as the number of writes to a flash device are limited.

### 810 **End of informative comment**

- 811 1. The state register is in a TPM shielded-location.
  - 812 a. The state register **MUST** be non-volatile.
  - 813 b. The update function to the state register is a TPM protected-capability.
  - 814 c. The primary input to the update function **SHOULD** be the entropy collector.

- 815 2. If the current value of the state register is unknown, calls made to the update function  
816 with known data MUST NOT result in the state register ending up in a state that an  
817 attacker could know.
- 818 a. This requirement implies that the addition of known data MUST NOT result in a  
819 decrease in the entropy of the state register.
- 820 3. The TPM MUST NOT export the state register.

### 821 4.2.5.3 Mixing Function

#### 822 Start of informative comment

823 The mixing function takes the state register and produces output. The mixing function is a  
824 TPM protected-capability. The mixing function takes the value from a state register and  
825 creates the RNG output. If the entropy source has a bias, then the collector takes that bias  
826 into account before sending the information to the state register.

#### 827 End of informative comment

- 828 1. Each use of the mixing function MUST affect the state register.
- 829 a. This requirement is to affect the volatile register and does not need to affect the non-  
830 volatile state register.

### 831 4.2.5.4 RNG Reset

#### 832 Start of informative comment

833 The resetting of the RNG occurs at least in response to a loss of power to the device.

834 These tests prove only that the RNG is still operating properly; they do not prove how much  
835 entropy is in the state register. This is why the self-test checks only after the load of  
836 previous state and may occur before the addition of more entropy.

#### 837 End of informative comment

- 838 1. The RNG MUST NOT output any bits after a system reset until the following occurs:
- 839 a. The entropy collector performs an update on the state register. This does not include  
840 the adding of the previous state but requires at least one bit of entropy.
- 841 b. The mixing function performs a self-test. This self-test MUST occur after the loading  
842 of the previous state. It MAY occur before the entropy collector performs the first  
843 update.

### 844 4.2.6 SHA-1 Engine

#### 845 Start of informative comment

846 The SHA-1, Figure 4:a C5, hash capability is primarily used by the TPM, as it is a trusted  
847 implementation of a hash algorithm. The hash interfaces are exposed outside the TPM to  
848 support Measurement taking during platform boot phases and to allow environments that  
849 have limited capabilities access to a hash functions. The TPM is not a cryptographic  
850 accelerator. TCG does not specify minimum throughput requirements for TPM hash  
851 services.

#### 852 End of informative comment

- 853 1. The TPM MUST implement the SHA-1 hash algorithm as defined by FIPS-180-1.
- 854 2. The output of SHA-1 is 160 bits and all areas that expect a hash value are REQUIRED  
855 to support the full 160 bits.
- 856 3. The only commands that SHALL be presented to the TPM in-between a TPM\_SHA1Start  
857 command and a TPM\_SHA1Complete command SHALL be a variable number (possibly  
858 0) of TPM\_SHA1Update commands.
- 859 a. The TPM\_SHA1Update commands can occur in a transport session.
- 860 4. Throughout all parts of the specification the characters x1 || x2 imply the  
861 concatenation of x1 and x2

## 862 4.2.7 Power Detection

### 863 Start of informative comment

864 The power detection component, Figure 4:a C6, manages the TPM power states in  
865 conjunction with platform power states. TCG requires that the TPM be notified of all power  
866 state changes.

867 Power detection also supports physical presence assertions. The TPM may restrict  
868 command-execution during periods when the operation of the platform is physically  
869 constrained. In a PC, operational constraints occur during the power-on self-test (POST)  
870 and require Operator input via the keyboard. The TPM might allow access to certain  
871 commands while in a constrained execution mode or boot state. At some critical point in the  
872 POST process, the TPM may be notified of state changes that affect TPM command  
873 processing modes.

### 874 End of informative comment

## 875 4.2.8 Opt-In

### 876 Start of informative comment

877 The Opt-In component, Figure 4:a C7, provides mechanisms and protections to allow the  
878 TPM to be turned on/off, enabled/disabled, activated/deactivated.. The Opt-In component  
879 maintains the state of persistent and volatile flags and enforces the semantics associated  
880 with these flags.

881 The setting of flags requires either authorization by the TPM Owner or the assertion of  
882 physical presence at the platform. The platform's manufacturer determines the techniques  
883 used to represent physical-presence. The guiding principle is that no remote entity should  
884 be able to change TPM status without either knowledge of the TPM Owner or the Operator is  
885 physically present at the platform. Physical presence may be asserted during a period when  
886 platform operation is constrained such as power-up.

887 Non-Volatile Flags:

888 PhysicalPresenceLifetimeLock

889 PhysicalPresenceHWEnable

890 PhysicalPresenceCMDEnable

891 Volatile Flags:

892 PhysicalPresenceV  
893 The following truth table explains the conditions in which the PhysicalPresenceV flag may  
894 be altered:

Persistent / Volatile	P	P	P	V	
Control Flags	PhysicalPresenceLifetimeLock	PhysicalPresenceHWEnable	PhysicalPresenceCMDEnable	PhysicalPresenceV	
Volatile Access Semantics to Physical Presence Flag	-	F	F	-	No access to PhysicalPresenceV flag.
	-	F	T	T	
	-	-	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through TCS_PhysicalPresence command enabled.
	-	T	-	-	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal enabled.
	-	T	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal or TCS_PhysicalPresence command enabled.
Persistent Access Semantics to Physical Presence Flag	T	F	F	-	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag permanently disabled.
	T	F	T	T	
	T	F	T	F	Exclusive access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through TCS_PhysicalPresence command permanently enabled.
	T	T	F	-	Exclusive access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal permanently enabled.
	T	T	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal or TCS_PhysicalPresence command permanently enabled.

895 Table 4:a - Physical Presence Semantics

896 TCG also recognizes the concept of unambiguous physical presence. Conceptually, the use  
897 of dedicated electrical hardware providing a trusted path to the Operator has higher  
898 precedence than the physicalPresenceV flag value. Unambiguous physical presence may be  
899 used to override physicalPresenceV flag value under conditions specified by platform  
900 specific design considerations.

901 Additional details relating to physical presence can be found in sections on Volatile and  
902 Non-volatile memory.

903 **End of informative comment**

## 904 4.2.9 Execution Engine

905 **Start of informative comment**

906 The execution engine, Figure 4:a C8, runs program code to execute the TPM commands  
907 received from the I/O port. The execution engine is a vital component in ensuring that  
908 operations are properly segregated and shield locations are protected.

909 **End of informative comment**

## 910 4.2.10 Non-Volatile Memory

### 911 **Start of informative comment**

912 Non-volatile memory component, Figure 4:a C9, is used to store persistent identity and  
913 state associated with the TPM. The NV area has set items (like the EK) and also is available  
914 for allocation and use by entities authorized by the TPM Owner.

915 The TPM designer should consider the use model of the TPM and if the use of NV storage is  
916 a concern. NV storage does have a limited life and using the NV storage in a high volume  
917 use model may prematurely wear out the TPM.

### 918 **End of informative comment**

## 919 4.3 Data Integrity Register (DIR)

### 920 **Start of informative comment**

921 The DIR were a version 1.1 function. They provided a place to store information using the  
922 TPM NV storage.

923 In 1.2 the DIR are deprecated and the use of the DIR should move to the general purpose  
924 NV storage area.

925 The TPM must still support the functionality of the DIR register in the NV storage area.

### 926 **End of informative comment**

- 927 1. A TPM MUST provide one Data Integrity Register (DIR)
  - 928 a. The TPM DIR commands are deprecated in 1.2
  - 929 b. The TPM MUST reserve the space for one DIR in the NV storage area
  - 930 c. The TPM MAY have more than 1 DIR.
- 931 2. The DIR MUST be 160-bit values and MUST be held in TPM shielded-locations.
- 932 3. The DIR MUST be non-volatile (values are maintained during the power-off state).
  - 933 a. A TPM implementation need not provide the same number of DIRs as PCRs.

## 934 4.4 Platform Configuration Register (PCR)

### 935 **Start of informative comment**

936 A Platform Configuration Register (PCR) is a 160-bit storage location for discrete integrity  
937 measurements. There are a minimum of 16 PCR registers. All PCR registers are shielded-  
938 locations and are inside of the TPM. The decision of whether a PCR contains a standard  
939 measurement or if the PCR is available for general use is deferred to the platform specific  
940 specification.

941 A large number of integrity metrics may be measured in a platform, and a particular  
942 integrity metric may change with time and a new value may need to be stored. It is difficult  
943 to authenticate the source of measurement of integrity metrics, and as a result a new value  
944 of an integrity metric cannot be permitted to simply overwrite an existing value. (A rogue  
945 could erase an existing value that indicates subversion and replace it with a benign value.)  
946 Thus, if values of integrity metrics are individually stored, and updates of integrity metrics

947 must be individually stored, it is difficult to place an upper bound on the size of memory  
948 that is required to store integrity metrics.

949 The PCR is designed to hold an unlimited number of measurements in the register. It does  
950 this by using a cryptographic hash and hashing all updates to a PCR. The pseudo code for  
951 this is:

952 
$$\text{PCR}_i \text{ New} = \text{HASH} (\text{PCR}_i \text{ Old value} \parallel \text{value to add})$$

953 There are two salient properties of cryptographic hash that relate to PCR construction.  
954 Ordering – meaning updates to PCRs are not commutative. For example, measuring (A then  
955 B) is not the same as measuring (B then A).

956 The other hash property is one-way-ness. This property means it should be computationally  
957 infeasible for an attacker to determine the input message given a PCR value. Furthermore,  
958 subsequent updates to a PCR cannot be determined without knowledge of the previous PCR  
959 values or all previous input messages provided to a PCR register since the last reset.

960 **End of informative comment**

- 961 1. The PCR MUST be a 160-bit field that holds a cumulatively updated hash value
- 962 2. The PCR MUST have a status field associated with it
- 963 3. The PCR MUST be in the RTS and should be in volatile storage
- 964 4. The PCR MUST allow for an unlimited number of measurements to be stored in the PCR
- 965 5. The PCR MUST preserve the ordering of measurements presented to it
- 966 6. A PCR MUST be set to the default value as specified by the PCRReset attribute
- 967 7. A TPM implementation MUST provide 16 or more independent PCRs. These PCRs are  
968 identified by index and MUST be numbered from 0 (that is, PCR0 through PCR15 are  
969 required for TCG compliance). Vendors MAY implement more registers for general-  
970 purpose use. Extra registers MUST be numbered contiguously from 16 up to max - 1,  
971 where max is the maximum offered by the TPM.
- 972 8. The TCG-protected capabilities that expose and modify the PCRs use a 32-bit index,  
973 indicating the maximum usable PCR index. However, TCG reserves register indices 230  
974 and higher for later versions of the specification. A TPM implementation MUST NOT  
975 provide registers with indices greater than or equal to 230. In this specification, the  
976 following terminology is used (although this internal format is not mandated).
- 977 9. The PSS MUST define at least define one measurement that the RTM MUST make and  
978 the PCR where the measurement is stored.
- 979 10. A TCG measurement agent MAY discard a duplicate event instead of incorporating it in a  
980 PCR, provided that:
- 981 11. A relevant TCG platform specification explicitly permits duplicates of this type of event to  
982 be discarded
- 983 12. The PCR already incorporates at least one event of this type
- 984 13. An event of this type previously incorporated into the PCR included a statement that  
985 duplicate such events may be discarded. This option could be used where frequent  
986 recording of sleep states will adversely affect the lifetime of a TPM, for example.

987 14. PCRs and the protected capabilities that operate upon them MAY NOT be used until  
988 power-on self-test (TPM POST) has completed. If TPM POST fails, the TPM\_Extend  
989 operation will fail; and, of greater importance, the TPM\_Quote operation and TPM\_Seal  
990 operations that respectively report and examine the PCR contents MUST fail. At the  
991 successful completion of TPM POST, all PCRs MUST be set to their default value (either  
992 0x00...00 or 0xFF...FF). Additionally, the UINT32 flags MUST be set to zero.

## 993 5. Endorsement Key Creation

### 994 **Start of informative comment**

995 The TPM contains a 2048-bit RSA key pair called the endorsement key (EK). The public  
996 portion of the key is the PUBEK and the private portion the PRIVEK. Due to the nature of  
997 this key pair, both the PUBEK and the PRIVEK have privacy and security concerns.

998 The TPM has the EK generated before the end customer receives the platform. The entity  
999 that causes EK generation is also the entity that will create a credential attesting to the  
000 validity of the TPM and the EK.

001 The TPM can generate the EK internally using the TPM\_CreateEndorsementKey or by using  
002 an outside key generator. The EK needs to indicate the genealogy of the EK generation.

003 Subsequent attempts to either generate an EK or insert an EK must fail.

004 If the data structure TPM\_ENDORSEMENT\_CREDENTIAL is stored on a platform after an  
005 Owner has taken ownership of that platform, it SHALL exist only in storage to which access  
006 is controlled and is available to authorized entities.

### 007 **End of informative comment**

- 008 1. The EK MUST be a 2048-bit RSA key
  - 009 a. The public portion of the key is the PUBEK
  - 010 b. The private portion of the key is the PRIVEK
  - 011 c. The PRIVEK SHALL exist only in a TPM-shielded location.
- 012 2. Access to the PRIVEK and PUBEK MUST only be via TPM protected capabilities
  - 013 a. The protected capabilities MUST require TPM Owner authentication or operator  
014 physical presence
- 015 3. The generation of the EK may use a process external to the TPM and  
016 TPM\_CreateEndorsementKeyPair
  - 017 a. The external generation MUST result in an EK that has the same properties as an  
018 internally generated EK
  - 019 b. The external generation process MUST protect the EK from exposure during the  
020 generation and insertion of the EK
  - 021 c. After insertion of the EK the TPM state MUST be the same as the result of the  
022 TPM\_CreateEndorsementKeyPair execution
  - 023 d. The process MUST guarantee correct generation, cryptographic strength,  
024 uniqueness, privacy, and installation into a genuine TPM, of the EK
  - 025 e. The entity that signs the EK credential MUST be satisfied that the generation process  
026 properly generated the EK and inserted it into the TPM
  - 027 f. The process MUST be defined in the target of evaluation (TOE) of the security target  
028 in use to evaluate the TPM

## 029 5.1 Controlling Access to PRIVEK

### 030 **Start of informative comment**

031 Exposure of the PRIVEK is a security concern.

032 The TPM must ensure that the PRIVEK is not exposed outside of the TPM

033 **End of informative comment**

034 1. The PRIVEK MUST never be out of the control of a TPM shielded location

035 **5.2 Controlling Access to PUBEK**

036 **Start of informative comment**

037 There are no security concerns with exposure or use of the PUBEK.

038 Privacy guidelines suggest that PUBEK could be considered personally identifiable  
039 information (PII) if it were associated in some way with personal information (PI) or  
040 associated with other PII, but PUBEK alone cannot be considered PII. Arbitrary random  
041 numbers do not represent a threat to privacy unless further associated with PI or PII. The  
042 PUBEK is an arbitrary random number that may be associated with aggregate platform  
043 information, but not personally identifiable information.

044 An EK may become associated with personally identifiable information when an alias  
045 platform identifier (AIK) is also associated with PI. The attestation service could include  
046 personal information in the AIK credential, thereby making the AIK-PUBEK association PII –  
047 but not before.

048 The association of PUBEK with AIK therefore is important to protect via privacy guidelines.  
049 The owner/user of the TPM should be able to control whether PUBEK is disclosed along  
050 with AIK. The owner/user should be notified of personal information that might be added to  
051 an AIK credential, which could result in AIK being considered PII. The owner/user should  
052 be able to evaluate the mechanisms used by an attestation entity to protect PUBEK-AIK  
053 associations before disclosure occurs. No other entity should be privy to owner/user  
054 authorized disclosure besides the intended attestation entity.

055 Several commands may be used to negotiate the conditions of PUBEK-AIK disclosure.  
056 TPM\_MakeIdentity discloses PUBEK-AIK in the context of requesting an AIK credential.  
057 TPM\_ActivateIdentity ensures the owner/user has not been spoofed by an interloper. These  
058 interfaces allow the owner/user to choose whether disclosure is acceptable and control the  
059 circumstances under which disclosure takes place. They do not allow the owner/user the  
060 ability to retain control of PUBEK-AIK subsequent to disclosure except by traditional means  
061 of trusting the attestation entity to abide by an acceptable privacy policy. The owner/user is  
062 able to associate the accepted privacy policy with the disclosure operation (e.g.  
063 TPM\_MakeIdentity).

064 A persistent flag called readPubek can be set to TRUE to permit reading of PUBEK via  
065 TPM\_ReadPubek. Reporting the PUBEK value is not considered privacy sensitive because it  
066 cannot be associated with any of the AIK keys managed by the TPM without using TPM  
067 protected-capabilities.. Keys are encrypted with a nonce when flushed from TPM shielded-  
068 locations, Cryptanalysis of flushed keys will not reveal an association of EK to any AIK...

069 The command that manipulates the readPubek flag is TPM\_DisablePubekRead.

070 **End of informative comment**

## 071 **6. Attestation Identity Keys**

### 072 **Start of informative comment**

073 The Attestation Identity Key (AIK) is an alias to the Endorsement Key (EK). The AIK is a  
074 2048-bit RSA key. Generation of an AIK can occur anytime after establishment of the TPM  
075 Owner. The TPM can generate a virtually unlimited number of AIK.

076 The TPM Owner controls all aspects of the generation and activation of an AIK. The TPM  
077 Owner controls any data associated with the AIK. The AIK credential may contain  
078 application specific information.

079 An AIK is a signature key and it signs information generated internally by the TPM. The  
080 data would include PCR, other keys and TPM status information. The AIK is a substitute for  
081 the EK, which cannot perform signatures for security reasons and cannot perform  
082 signatures due to privacy concerns.

083 AIK creation involves three TPM commands.

084 The TPM\_MakeIdentity command causes the TPM to generate the AIK key pair. The  
085 command also discloses the EK-AIK binding to the service that will issue the AIK credential.

086 The TPM\_ActivateIdentity command unwraps a session key that allows for the decryption of  
087 the AIK credential. The session key was encrypted using the PUBEK and requires the  
088 PRIVEK to perform the decryption.

089 The TPM\_RecoverIdentity allows for a subsequent recovery of the session key by again  
090 performing the decryption using the PRIVEK.

091 Use of the AIK credential is outside of the control of the TPM.

092 The user of an AIK must prove knowledge of the 160-bit AIK authentication value to use the  
093 AIK.

### 094 **End of informative comment**

## 095 **7. TPM Ownership**

### 096 **Start of informative comment**

097 Taking ownership of a TPM is the process of inserting a shared secret into a TPM shielded-  
098 location. Any entity that knows the shared secret is a TPM Owner. Proof of ownership  
099 occurs when an entity, in response to a challenge, proves knowledge of the shared secret.  
100 Certain operations in the TPM require authentication from a TPM Owner.

101 Certain operations also allow the human, with physical possession of the platform, to assert  
102 TPM Ownership rights. When asserting TPM Ownership, using physical presence, the  
103 operations must not expose any secrets protected by the TPM.

104 The platform owner controls insertion of the shared secret into the TPM. The platform  
105 owner sets the NV persistent flag `ownershipEnabled` that allows the execution of the  
106 `TPM_TakeOwnership` command. The `TPM_SetOwnerInstall`, the command that controls the  
107 value `ownershipEnabled`, requires the assertion of physical presence.

108 Attempting to execute `TPM_TakeOwnership` fails when a TPM already has an owner. To  
109 remove an owner when the current TPM Owner is unable to remove themselves, the human  
110 that is in possession of the platform asserts physical presence and executes  
111 `TPM_ForceClear` which removes the shared secret.

112 The insertion protocol that supplies the shared secret has the following requirements:  
113 confidentiality, integrity, remoteness and verifiability.

114 To provide confidentiality the proposed TPM Owner encrypts the shared secret using the  
115 PUBEK. This requires the PRIVEK to decrypt the value. As the PRIVEK is only available in  
116 the TPM the encrypted shared secret is only available to the intended TPM.

117 The integrity of the process occurs by the TPM providing proof of the value of the shared  
118 secret inserted into the TPM.

119 By using the confidentiality and integrity, the protocol is useable by TPM Owners that are  
120 remote to the platform.

121 The new TPM Owner validates the insertion of the shared secret by using integrity response.

### 122 **End of informative comment**

123 The TPM MUST ship with no Owner installed. The TPM MUST use the ownership-control  
124 protocol (OIAP or OSAP)

## 125 **7.1 Platform Ownership and Root of Trust for Storage**

### 126 **Start of informative comment**

127 The semantics of platform ownership are tied to the Root-of-trust-for-storage (RTS). The  
128 `TPM_TakeOwnership` command creates a new Storage Root Key (SRK) and new `tpmProof`  
129 value whenever a new owner is established. It follows that objects owned by a previous  
130 owner will not be inherited by the new owner. Objects that should be inherited must be  
131 transferred by deliberate data migration actions.

### 132 **End of informative comment**

## 133 8. Authentication and Authorization Data

### 134 **Start of informative comment**

135 Using security vernacular the terms below apply to the TPM for this discussion:

136 Authentication: The process of providing proof of claimed ownership of an object or a  
137 subject's claimed identity.

138 Authorization: Granting a subject appropriate access to an object.

139 Each TPM object that does not allow "public" access contains a 160-bit shared secret. This  
140 shared secret is enveloped within the object itself. The TPM grants use of TPM objects based  
141 on the presentation of the matching 160-bits using protocols designed to provide protection  
142 of the shared secret. This shared secret is called the AuthData.

143 Neither the TPM, nor its objects (such as keys), contain access controls for its objects (the  
144 exception to this is what is provided by the delegation mechanism). If an subject presents  
145 the AuthData, that subject is granted full use of the object based on the object's  
146 capabilities, not a set of rights or permissions of the subject. This apparent overloading of  
147 the concepts of authentication and authorization has caused some confusion. This is  
148 caused by having two similarly rooted but distinct perspectives.

149 From the perspective of the TPM looking out, this AuthData is its sole mechanism for  
150 authenticating the owner of its objects, thus from its perspective it is authentication data.  
151 However, from the application's perspective this data is typically the result of other  
152 functions that might perform authentications or authorizations of subjects using higher  
153 level mechanisms such as OS login, file system access, etc. Here, AuthData is a result of  
154 these functions so in this usage, it authorizes access to the TPM's objects. From this  
155 perspective, i.e., the application looking in on the TPM and its objects, the AuthData is  
156 authorization data. For this reason, and thanks to a common root within the English  
157 language, the term for this data is chosen to be AuthData and is to be interpreted or  
158 expanded as either authentication data or authorization data depending on context and  
159 perspective.

160 The term AuthData refers to the 160-bit value used to either prove ownership of, or  
161 authorization to use, an object. This is also called the object's shared secret. The term  
162 authorization will be used when referring the combined action of verifying the AuthData and  
163 allowing access to the object or function. The term authorization session applies to a state  
164 where the AuthData has been authentication and a session handle established that is  
165 associated with that authentication.

166 A wide-range of objects use AuthData. It is used to establish platform ownership, key use  
167 restrictions, object migration and to apply access control to opaque objects protected by the  
168 TPM.

169 AuthData is a 160-bit shared-secret plus high-entropy random number. The assumption is  
170 the shared-secret and random number are mixed using SHA-1 digesting, but no specific  
171 function for generating AuthData is specified by TCG.

172 TCG command processing sessions (e.g. OSAP, ADIP) may use AuthData as an initialization  
173 vector when creating a one-time pad. Session encryption is used to encrypt portions of  
174 command messages exchanged between TPM and a caller.

175 The TPM stores AuthData with TPM controlled-objects and in shielded-locations. AuthData  
176 is never in the clear, when managed by the TPM except in shielded-locations. Only TPM  
177 protected-capabilities may access AuthData (contained in the TPM). AuthData objects may  
178 not be used for any other purpose besides authentication and authorization of TPM  
179 operations on controlled-objects.

180 Outside the TPM, a reference monitor of some kind is responsible for protecting AuthData.  
181 AuthData should be regarded as a controlled data item (CDI) in the context of the security  
182 model governing the reference monitor. TCG expects this entity to preserve the interests of  
183 the platform Owner.

184 There is no requirement that instances of AuthData be unique.

#### 185 **End of informative comment**

186 The TPM MUST reserve 160 bits for the AuthData. The TPM treats the AuthData as a blob.  
187 The TPM MUST keep AuthData in a shielded-location.

188 The TPM MUST enforce that the only usage in the TPM of the AuthData is to perform  
189 authorizations.

## 190 **8.1 Dictionary Attack Considerations**

### 191 **Start of informative comment**

192 The decision to provide protections against dictionary attacks is due to the inability of the  
193 TPM to guarantee that an authorization value has high entropy. While the creation and  
194 authorization protocols could change to support the assurance of high entropy values, the  
195 changes would be drastic and would totally invalidate any 1.x TPM version.

196 Version 1.1 explicitly avoided any requirements for dictionary attack mitigation.

197 Version 1.2 adds the requirement that the TPM vendor provide some assistance against  
198 dictionary attacks. The internal mechanism is vendor specific. The TPM designer should  
199 review the requirements for dictionary attack mitigation in the Common Criteria.

200 The 1.2 specification does not provide any functions to turn on the dictionary attack  
201 prevention. The specification does provide a way to reset from the TPM response to an  
202 attack.

203 By way of example, the following is a way to implement the dictionary attack mitigation.

204 The TPM keeps a count of failed authorization attempts. The vendor allows the TPM Owner  
205 to set a threshold of failed authorizations. When the count exceeds the threshold, the TPM  
206 locks up and does not respond to any requests for a time out period. The time out period  
207 doubles each time the count exceeds the threshold. If the TPM resets during a time out  
208 period, the time out period starts over after TPM\_Init, or TPM\_Startup. To reset the count  
209 and the time out period the TPM Owner executes TPM\_ResetLockValue. If the authorization  
210 for TPM\_ResetLockValue fails, the TPM must lock up for the entire time out period and no  
211 additional attempts at unlocking will be successful. Executing TPM\_ResetLockValue when  
212 outside of a time out period still results in the resetting of the count and time out period.

### 213 **End of informative comment**

214 The TPM SHALL incorporate mechanism(s) that will provide some protection against  
215 exhaustive or dictionary attacks on the authorization values stored within the TPM.

216 This version of the TPM specification does NOT specify the particular strategy to be used.  
217 Some examples might include locking out the TPM after a certain number of failures,  
218 forcing a reboot under some combination of failures, or requiring specific actions on the  
219 part of some actors after an attack has been detected. The mechanisms to manage these  
220 strategies are vendor specific at this time.

221 If the TPM in response to the attacks locks up for some time period or requires a special  
222 operation to restart, the TPM MUST prevent any authorized TPM command and MAY  
223 prevent any TPM from executing until the mitigation mechanism completes. The TPM  
224 Owner can reset the mechanism using the TPM\_ResetLockValue command.  
225 TPM\_ResetLockValue MUST be allowed to run exactly once while the TPM is locked up.

226 **9. TPM Operation**227 **Start of informative comment**

228 Through the course of TPM operation, it may enter several operational modes that include  
229 power-up, self-test, administrative modes and full operation. This section describes TPM  
230 operational states and state transition criteria. Where applicable, the TPM commands used  
231 to facilitate state transition or function are included in diagrams and descriptions.

232 The TPM keeps the information relative to the TPM operational state in a combination of  
233 persistent and volatile flags. For ease of reading the persistent flags are prefixed by pFlags  
234 and the volatile flags prefixed by vFlags.

235 The following state diagram describes TPM operational states at a high level. Subsequent  
236 state diagrams drill-down to finer detail that describes fundamental operations, protections  
237 on operations and the transitions between them.

238 The state diagrams use the following notation:



239 - Signifies a state.



240 - Transitions between states are represented as a single headed arrows.



241 - Circular transitions indicate operations that don't result in a transition to another  
242 state.



243 - Decision boxes split state flow based on a logical test. Decision conditions are called  
244 Guards and are identified by bracketed text..

245 < [text] > Bracketed text indicates transitions that are gated. Text within the brackets  
246 describes the pre-condition that must be met before state transition may occur.

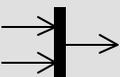
247 < /name > Transitions may list the events that trigger state transition. The forward slash  
248 demarcates event names.



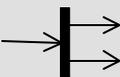
249 - The starting point for reading state diagrams.



250 - The ending point for state diagrams. Perpetual state systems may not have an ending  
251 indicator.



252 - The collection bar consolidates multiple identical transition events into a single  
253 transition arrow.



254 - The distribution bar splits transitions to flow into multiple states.

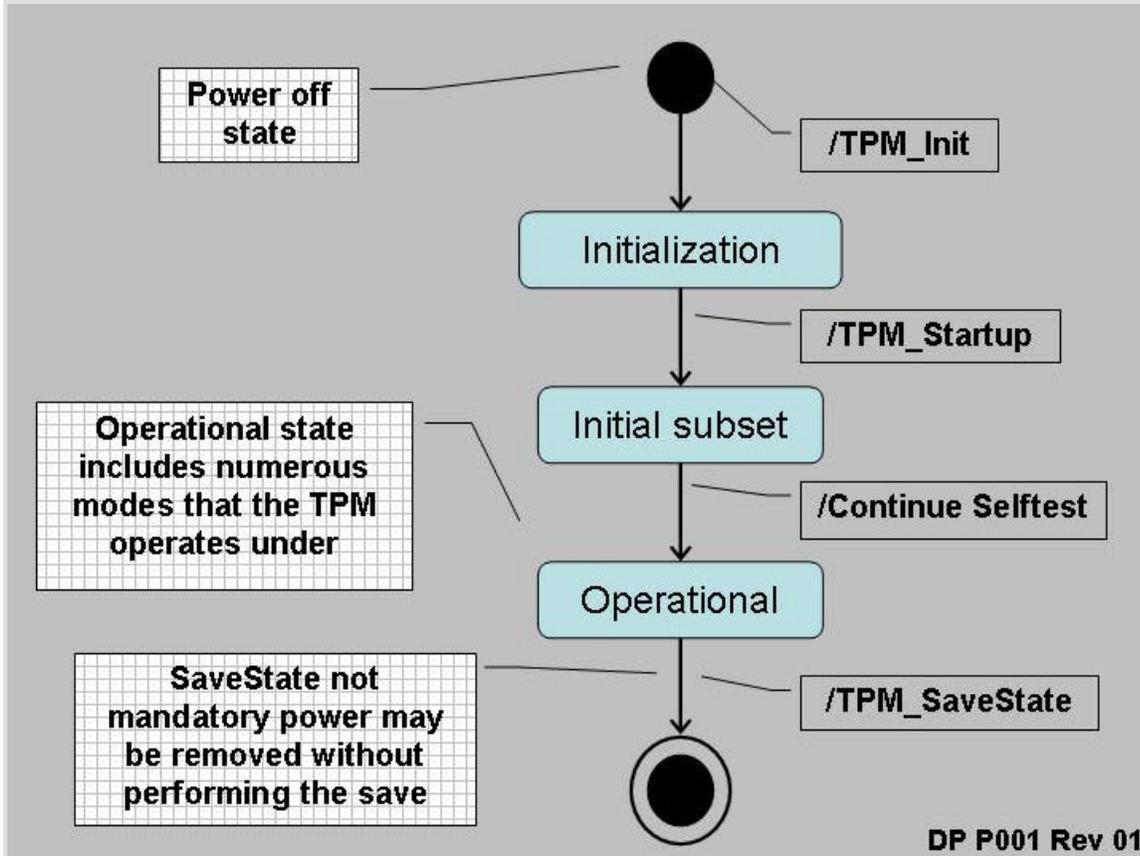


255 - The history indicator means state values are remembered across context switches or  
256 power-cycles.

257 **End of informative comment**

## 258 9.1 TPM Initialization & Operation State Flow

259 **Start of informative comment**



260  
261 **Figure 9:a - TPM Operational States**

262 **End of informative comment**

### 263 9.1.1 Initialization

264 **Start of informative comment**

265 TPM\_Init transitions the TPM from a power-off state to one where the TPM begins an  
266 initialization process. TPM\_Init could be the result of power being applied to the platform or  
267 a hard reset.

268 TPM\_Init sets an internal flag to indicate that the TPM is undergoing initialization. The TPM  
269 must complete initialization before it is operational. The completion of initialization requires  
270 the receipt of the TPM\_Startup command.

271 The TPM is not fully operational until all of the self-tests are complete. Successful  
272 completion of the self-tests allows the TPM to enter fully operational mode.

273 Fully operational does not imply that all functions of the TPM are available. The TPM needs  
274 to have a TPM Owner and be enabled for all functions to be available.

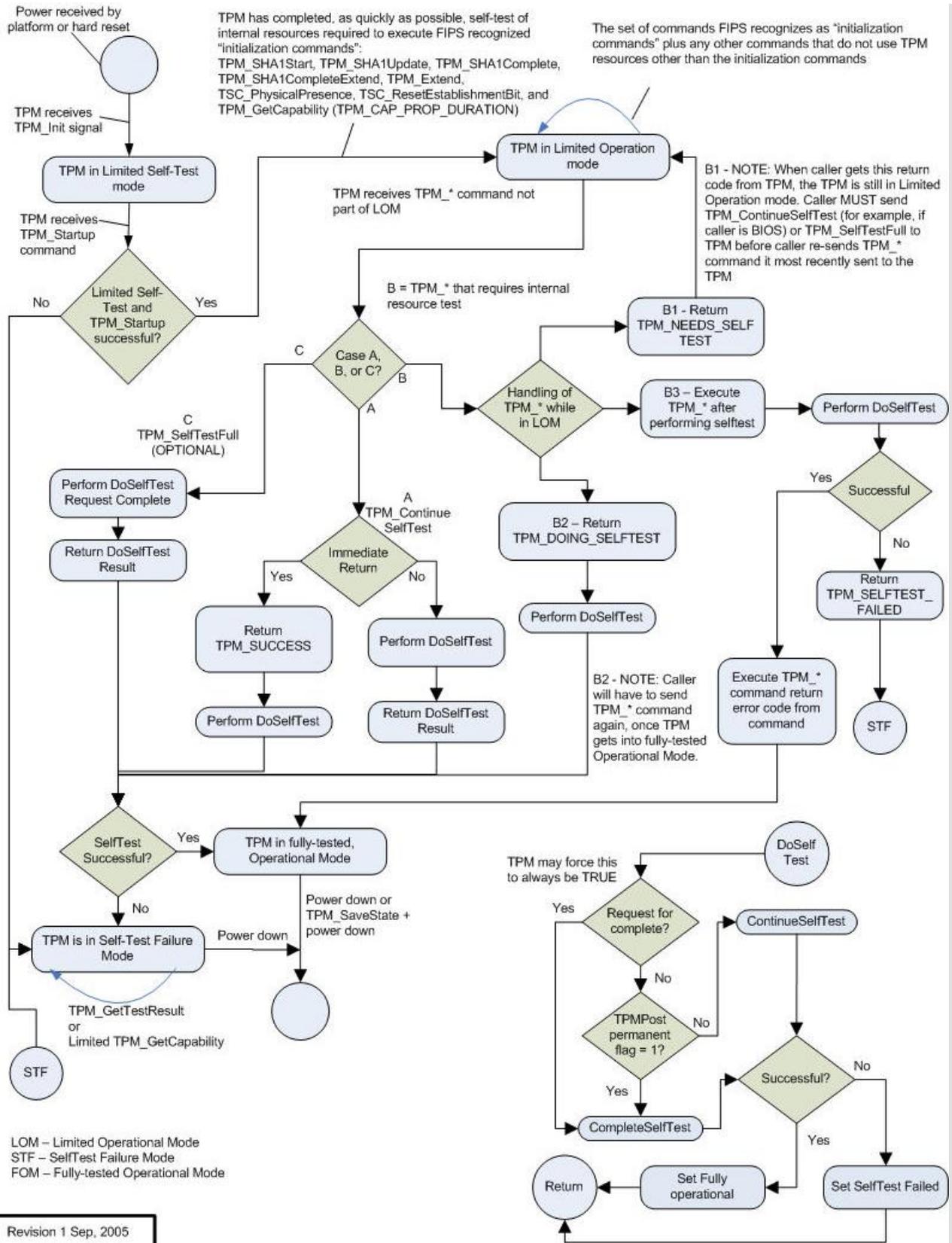
275 The TPM transitions out of the operational mode by having power removed from the system.  
276 Prior to the exiting operational mode, the TPM prepares for the transition by executing the  
277 TPM\_SaveState command. There is no requirement that TPM\_SaveState execute before the  
278 transition to power-off mode occurs.

279 **End of informative comment**

280 1. After TPM\_Init and until receipt of TPM\_Startup the TPM MUST return  
281 TPM\_INVALID\_POSTINIT for all commands. Prior to receipt of TPM\_Startup the TPM  
282 MAY enter shutdown or failure mode.

283 **9.2 Self-Test Modes**

284 **Start of informative comment**



Revision 1 Sep, 2005

285

286 Figure 9:b - Self-Test States

287 After initialization the TPM performs a limited self-test. This test provides the assurance  
288 that a selected subset of TPM commands will perform properly. The limited nature of the  
289 self-test allows the TPM to be functional in as short of time as possible. The commands  
290 enabled by this self-test are:

291 TPM\_SHA1xxx - Enabling the SHA-1 commands allows the TPM to assist the platform  
292 startup code. The startup code may execute in an extremely constrained memory  
293 environment and having the TPM resources available to perform hash functions can allow  
294 the measurement of code at an early time. While the hash is available, there are no speed  
295 requirements on the I/O bus to the TPM or on the TPM itself so use of this functionality  
296 may not meet platform startup requirements.

297 TPM\_Extend - Enabling the extend, and by reference the PCR, allows the startup code to  
298 perform measurements. Extending could use the SHA-1 TPM commands or perform the  
299 hash using the main processor.

300 TPM\_Startup - This command must be available as it is the transition command from the  
301 initial environment to the limited operational state.

302 TPM\_ContinueSelfTest - This command causes the TPM to complete the self-tests on all  
303 other TPM functions. If TPM receives a command, and the self-test for that command has  
304 not been completed, the TPM may implicitly perform the actions of the  
305 TPM\_ContinueSelfTest command.

306 TPM\_SelfTestFull - A TPM MAY allow this command after initialization, but typically  
307 TPM\_ContinueSelfTest would be used to avoid repeating the limited self tests.

308 TPM\_GetCapability - A subset of capabilities can be read in the limited operation state.

309 The complete self-test ensures that all TPM functionality is available and functioning  
310 properly.

### 311 **End of informative comment**

312 1. At startup, a TPM MUST self-test all internal functions that are necessary to do  
313 TPM\_SHA1Start, TPM\_SHA1Update, TPM\_SHA1Complete, TPM\_SHA1CompleteExtend,  
314 TPM\_Extend, TPM\_Startup, TPM\_ContinueSelfTest, and a subset of TPM\_GetCapability..

315 2. The TSC\_PhysicalPresence and TSC\_ResetEstablishmentBit commands do not operate  
316 on shielded-locations and have no requirement to be self-tested before any use. TPM's  
317 SHOULD test these functions before operation.

318 3. The TPM MAY allow TPM\_SelfTestFull to be used before completion of the actions of  
319 TPM\_ContinueSelfTest.

320 4. The TPM MAY implicitly run the actions of TPM\_ContinueSelfTest upon receipt of a  
321 command that requires untested resources.

322 5. The platform specific specification MUST define the maximum startup self-test time.

## 323 **9.2.1 Operational Self-Test**

### 324 **Start of informative comment**

325 The completion of self-test is initiated by TPM\_ContinueSelfTest. The TPM MAY allow  
326 TPM\_SelfTestFull to be issued instead of TPM\_ContinueSelfTest.

327 TPM\_ContinueSelfTest is the command issued during platform initialization after the  
328 platform has made use of the early commands (perhaps for an early measurement), the  
329 platform is now performing other initializations, and the TPM can be left alone to complete  
330 the self-tests. Before any command other than the limited subset is executed, all self-tests  
331 must be complete.

332 TPM\_SelfTestFull is a request to have the TPM perform another complete self-test. This test  
333 will take some time but provides an accurate assessment of the TPM's ability to perform all  
334 operations.

335 The original design of TPM\_ContinueSelfTest was for the TPM to test those functions that  
336 the original startup did not test. The FIPS-140 evaluation of the specification requested a  
337 change such that TPM\_ContinueSelfTest would perform a complete self-test. The rationale  
338 is that the original tests are only part of the initialization of the TPM; if they fail, the TPM  
339 does not complete initialization. Performing a complete test after initialization meets the  
340 FIPS-140 requirements. The TPM may work differently in FIPS mode or the TPM may simply  
341 write the TPM\_ContinueSelfTest command such that it always performs the complete check.

342 TPM\_ContinueSelfTest causes a test of the TPM internal functions. When  
343 TPM\_ContinueSelfTest is asynchronous, the TPM immediately returns a successful result  
344 code before starting the tests. When testing is complete, the TPM does not return any  
345 result. When TPM\_ContinueSelfTest is synchronous, the TPM completes the self-tests and  
346 then returns a success or failure result code.

347 The TPM may reject any command other than the limited subset if self test has not been  
348 completed. Alternatively, the actions of TPM\_ContinueSelfTest may start automatically if the  
349 TPM receives a command and there has been no testing of the underlying functionality. If  
350 the TPM implements this implicit self-test, it may immediately return a result code  
351 indicating that it is doing self-test. Alternatively, it may do the self-test, then do the  
352 command, and return only the result code of the command.

353 Programmers of TPM drivers should take into account the time estimates for self-test and  
354 minimize the polling for self-test completion. While self-test is executing, the TPM may  
355 return an out-of-band "busy" signal to prevent command from being issued. Alternatively,  
356 the TPM may accept the command but delay execution until after the self-test completes.  
357 Either of those alternatives may appear as if the TPM is blocking to upper software layers.  
358 Alternatively, the TPM may return an indication that is doing a self-test.

359 Upon the completion of the self-tests, the result of the self-tests are held in the TPM such  
360 that a subsequent call to TPM\_GetTestResult returns the self-test result.

361 In version 1.1, there was a separate command to create a signed self-test,  
362 TPM\_CertifySelfTest. Version 1.2 deprecates the command. The new use model is to perform  
363 TPM\_GetTestResult inside of a transport session and then use  
364 TPM\_ReleaseTransportSigned to obtain the signature.

365 If self-tests fail, the TPM goes into failure state and does not allow most other operations to  
366 continue. The TPM\_GetTestResult will operate in failure mode so an outside observer can  
367 obtain information as to the reason for the self-test failure.

368 A TPM may take three courses of action when presented with a command that requires an  
369 untested resource.

370 1. The TPM may return TPM\_NEEDS\_SELFTEST, indicating that the execution of the  
371 command requires TPM\_ContinueSelfTest.

372 2. The TPM may implicitly execute the self-test and return a TPM\_DOING\_SELFTEST  
373 return code, causing the external software to retry the command.

374 3. The TPM may implicitly execute the self-test, execute the ordinal, and return the results  
375 of the ordinal.

376 The following example shows how software can detect either mechanism with a single piece  
377 of code

378 1. SW sends TPM\_xxx command

379 2. SW checks return code from TPM

380 3. If return code is TPM\_DOING\_SELFTEST, SW attempts to resend

381 a. If the TIS times out waiting for TPM ready, pause for self-test time then resend

382 b. if TIS timeout, then error

383 4. else if return code is TPM\_NEEDS\_SELFTEST

384 a. Send TPM\_ContinueSelfTest

385 5. else

386 a. Process the ordinal return code

387 **End of informative comment**

388 1. The TPM MUST provide startup self-tests. The TPM MUST provide mechanisms to allow  
389 the self-tests to be run on demand. The response from the self-tests is pass or fail.

390 2. The TPM MUST complete the startup self-tests in a manner and timeliness that allows  
391 the TPM to be of use to the BIOS during the collection of integrity metrics.

392 3. The TPM MUST complete the required checks before a given feature is in use. If a  
393 function self-test is not complete the TPM MUST return TPM\_NEEDS\_SELFTEST or  
394 TPM\_DOING\_SELFTEST, or do the self-test before using the feature.

395 4. There are two sections of startup self-tests: required and recommended. The  
396 recommended tests are not a requirement due to timing constraints. The TPM  
397 manufacturer should perform as many tests as possible in the time constraints.

398 5. The TPM MUST report the tests that it performs.

399 6. The TPM MUST provide a mechanism to allow self-test to execute on request by any  
400 challenger.

401 7. The TPM MUST provide for testing of some operations during each execution of the  
402 operation.

403 8. The TPM MUST check the following:

404 a. RNG functionality

405 b. Reading and extending the integrity registers. The self-test for the integrity registers  
406 will leave the integrity registers in a known state.

407 c. Testing the EK integrity, if it exists

408 i. This requirement specifies that the TPM will verify that the endorsement key pair  
409 can sign and verify a known value. This test also tests the RSA sign and verify

- 410 engine. If the EK has not yet been generated the TPM action is manufacturer  
411 specific.
- 412 d. The integrity of the protected capabilities of the TPM
- 413 i. This means that the TPM must ensure that its “microcode” has not changed, and  
414 not that a test must be run on each function.
- 415 e. Any tamper-resistance markers
- 416 i. The tests on the tamper-resistance or tamper-evident markers are under  
417 programmable control. There is no requirement to check tamper-evident tape or  
418 the status of epoxy surrounding the case.
- 419 9. The TPM SHOULD check the following:
- 420 a. The hash functionality
- 421 i. This check will hash a known value and compare it to an expected result. There is  
422 no requirement to accept external data to perform the check.
- 423 ii. The TPM MAY support a test using external data.
- 424 b. Any symmetric algorithms
- 425 i. This check will use known data with a random key to encrypt and decrypt the  
426 data
- 427 c. Any additional asymmetric algorithms
- 428 i. This check will use known data to encrypt and decrypt.
- 429 d. The key-wrapping mechanism
- 430 i. The TPM should wrap and unwrap a key. The TPM MUST NOT use the  
431 endorsement key pair for this test.
- 432 e. Any other internal mechanisms
- 433 10. Self-Test Failure
- 434 a. When the TPM detects a failure during any self-test, the part experiencing the failure  
435 MUST enter a shutdown mode. This shutdown mode will allow only the following  
436 operations to occur:
- 437 i. Update. The update function MAY replace invalid microcode, providing that the  
438 parts of the TPM that provide update functionality have passed self-test.
- 439 ii. TPM\_GetTestResult. This command can assist the TPM manufacturer in  
440 determining the cause of the self-test failure.
- 441 iii. TPM\_GetCapability may return only the manufacturer and version.
- 442 iv. All other operations will return the error code TPM\_FAILEDSELFTEST.
- 443 b. Upon entering failure mode, the TPM clears all information except those items  
444 specified in TPM\_OwnerClear.
- 445 c. If the TPM detects an attack, by whatever mechanism the TPM uses, the TPM MUST  
446 invalidate all session keys and any internal keys, like AES, in use to store off-chip  
447 blobs.

- 448 11. Prior to the completion of the actions of TPM\_ContinueSelfTest the TPM MAY respond in  
449 two ways
- 450 a. The TPM MAY automatically invoke the actions of TPM\_ContinueSelfTest.
    - 451 i. The TPM MAY return TPM\_DOING\_SELFTEST.
    - 452 ii. The TPM may complete the self-test, execute the command, and return the  
453 command result.
  - 454 b. The TPM MAY return the error code TPM\_NEEDS\_SELFTEST

### 455 **9.3 Startup**

#### 456 **Start of informative comment**

457 Startup transitions the TPM from the initialization state to an operational state. The  
458 transition includes information from the platform to inform the TPM of the platform  
459 operating state. TPM\_Startup has three options: Clear, State and Deactivated.

460 The Clear option informs the TPM that the platform is starting in a “cleared” state or most  
461 likely a complete reboot. The TPM is to set itself to the default values and operational state  
462 specified by the TPM Owner.

463 The State option informs the TPM that the platform is requesting the TPM to recover a saved  
464 state and continue operation from the saved state. The platform previously made the  
465 TPM\_SaveState request to the TPM such that the TPM prepares values to be recovered later.

466 The Deactivated state informs the TPM that it should not allow further operations and  
467 should fail all subsequent command requests. The Deactivated state can only be reset by  
468 performing another TPM\_Init.

#### 469 **End of informative comment**

### 470 **9.4 Operational Mode**

#### 471 **Start of informative comment**

472 After the TPM completes both TPM\_Startup and self-tests, the TPM is ready for operation.

473 There are three discrete states, enabled or disabled, active or inactive and owned or  
474 unowned. These three states when combined form eight operational modes.



475

476 Figure 9:c - Eight Modes of Operation

477 S1 is the fully operational state where all TPM functions are available. S8 represents a mode  
478 where all TPM features (except those to change the state) are off.

479 Given the eight modes of operation, the TPM can be flexible in accommodating a wide range  
480 of usage scenarios. The default delivery state for a TPM should be S8 (disabled, inactive and  
481 unowned). In S8, the only mechanism available to move the TPM to S1 is having physical  
482 access to the platform.

483 Two examples illustrate the possibilities of shipping combinations.

484 Example 1

485 The customer does not want the TPM to attest to any information relative to the platform.  
486 The customer does not want any remote entity to attempt to change the control options that  
487 the platform owner is setting. For this customer the platform manufacturer sets the TPM in  
488 S8 (disabled, deactivated and unowned).

489 To change the state of the platform the platform owner would assert physical presence and  
490 enable, activate and insert the TPM Owner shared secret. The details of how to change the  
491 various modes is in subsequent sections.

492 This particular sequence gives maximum control to the customer.

493 Example 2

494 A corporate customer wishes to have platforms shipped to their employees and the IT  
495 department wishes to take control of the TPM remotely. To satisfy these needs the TPM  
496 should be in S5 (enabled, active and unowned). When the platform connects to the  
497 corporate LAN the IT department would execute the TPM\_TakeOwnership command  
498 remotely.

499 This sequence allows the IT department to accept platforms into their network without  
500 having to have physical access to each new machine.

501 **End of informative comment**

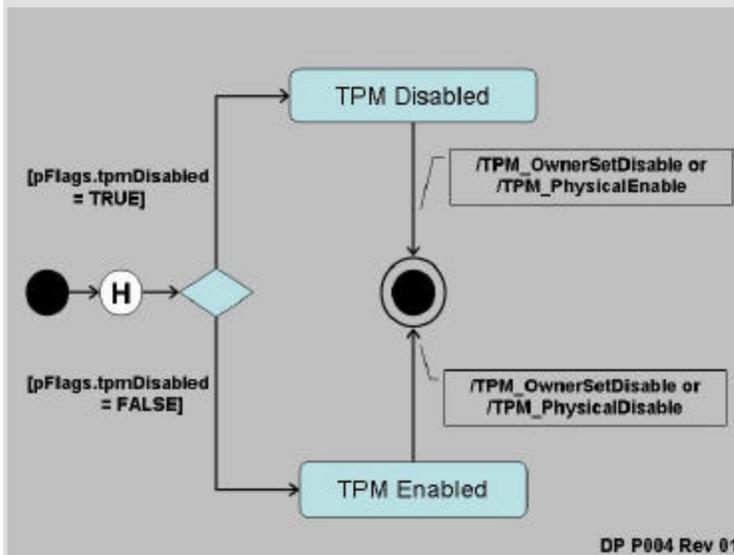
502 The TPM MUST have commands to perform the following:

- 503 1. Enable and disable the TPM. These commands MUST work as TPM Owner authorized or
- 504 with the assertion of physical presence
- 505 2. Activate and deactivate the TPM. These commands MUST work as TPM Owner
- 506 authorized or with the assertion of physical presence
- 507 3. Activate and deactivate the ability to take ownership of the TPM
- 508 4. Assert ownership of the TPM.

### 9.4.1 Enabling a TPM

#### Informative comment

511 A disabled TPM is not able to execute commands that use the resources of a TPM. While  
512 some commands are available (SHA-1 for example) the TPM is not able to load keys and  
513 perform TPM\_Seal and other such operations. These restrictions are the same as for an  
514 inactive TPM. The difference between inactive and disabled is that a disabled TPM is unable  
515 to execute the TPM\_TakeOwnership command. A disabled TPM that has a TPM Owner is not  
516 able to execute normal TPM commands.



517  
518 pFlags.tpmDisabled contains the current enablement status. When set to TRUE the TPM is  
519 disabled, when FALSE the TPM is enabled.

520 Changing the setting pFlags.tpmDisabled has no effect on any secrets or other values held  
521 by the TPM. No keys, monotonic counters or other resources are invalidated by changing  
522 TPM enablement. There is no guarantee that session resources (like transport sessions)  
523 survive the change in enablement, but there is no loss of secrets.

524 The TPM\_OwnerSetDisable command can be used to transition in either Enabled or  
525 Disabled states. The desired state is a parameter to TPM\_OwnerSetDisable. This command  
526 requires TPM Owner authentication to operate. It is suitable for post-boot and remote  
527 invocation.

528 An unowned TPM requires the execution of TPM\_PhysicalEnable to enable the TPM and  
529 TPM\_PhysicalDisable to disable the TPM. Operators of an owned TPM can also execute

530 these two commands. The use of the physical commands allows a platform operator to  
531 disable the TPM without TPM Owner authorization.

532 TPM\_PhysicalEnable transitions the TPM from Disabled to Enabled state. This command is  
533 guarded by a requirement of operator physical presence. Additionally, this command can be  
534 invoked by a physical event at the platform, whether or not the TPM has an Owner or there  
535 is a human physically present. This command is suitable for pre-boot invocation.

536 TPM\_PhysicalDisable transitions the TPM from Enabled to Disabled state. It has the same  
537 guard and invocation properties as TPM\_PhysicalEnable.

538 The subset of commands the TPM is able to execute is defined in the structures document  
539 in the persistent flag section.

540 Misuse of the disabled state can result in denial-of-service. Proper management of Owner  
541 AuthData and physical access to the platform is a critical element in ensuring availability of  
542 the system.

#### 543 **End of informative comment**

- 544 1. The TPM MUST provide an enable and disable command that is executed with TPM  
545 Owner authorization.
- 546 2. The TPM MUST provide an enable and disable command this is executed locally using  
547 physical presence.

### 548 **9.4.2 Activating a TPM**

#### 549 **Informative comment**

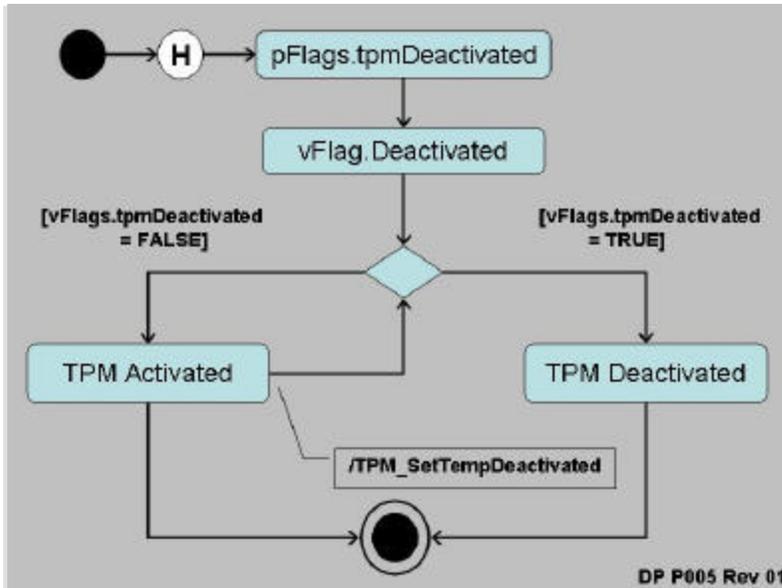
550 A deactivated TPM is not able to execute commands that use TPM resources. A major  
551 difference between deactivated and disabled is that a deactivated TPM CAN execute the  
552 TPM\_TakeOwnership command.

553 Activation control is with both persistent and volatile flags. The persistent flag is never  
554 directly checked by the TPM, rather it is the source of the original setting for the volatile  
555 flag. During TPM initialization the value of pFlags.tpmDeactivated is copied to  
556 vFlags.tpmDeactivated. When the TPM execution engine checks for TPM activation, it only  
557 references vFlags.tpmDeactivated.

558 Toggling the state of pFlags.tpmDeactivated uses TPM\_PhysicalSetDeactivated. This  
559 command requires physical presence. There is no associated TPM Owner authenticated  
560 command as the TPM Owner can always execute TPM\_OwnerSetDisabled which results in  
561 the same TPM operations. The toggling of this flag does not affect the current operation of  
562 the TPM but requires a reboot of the platform such that the persistent flag is again copied  
563 to the volatile flag.

564 The volatile flag, vFlags.tpmDeactivated, is set during initialization by the value of  
565 pFlags.tpmDeactivated. If vFlags.tpmDeactivated is TRUE the only way to reactivate the  
566 TPM is to reboot the platform and have pFlags reset the vFlags value.

567 If vFlags is FALSE and the TPM running TPM\_SetTempDeactivated will set  
568 vFlags.tpmDeactivated to TRUE and then require a reboot of the platform to reactivate the  
569 platform.



570

571 Figure 9:d - Activated and Deactivated States

572 TPM activation is for Operator convenience. It allows the operator to deactivate the platform  
 573 during a user session when the operator does not want to disclose platform or attestation  
 574 identity.

575 The subset of commands that are available when the TPM is deactivated is contained in the  
 576 structures document. The TPM\_TakeOwnership command is available when deactivated.

577 **End of informative comment**

- 578 1. The TPM MUST maintain a non-volatile flag that indicates the activation state
- 579 2. The TPM MUST provide for the setting of the non-volatile flag using a command that  
 580 requires physical presence
- 581 3. The TPM MUST sets a volatile flag using the current setting of the non-volatile flag.
- 582 4. The TPM MUST provide for a command that deactivates the TPM immediately
- 583 5. The only mechanism to reactivate a TPM once deactivated is to power-cycle the system.

584 **9.4.3 Taking TPM Ownership**

585 **Start of informative comment**

586 The owner of the TPM has ultimate control of the TPM. The owner of the TPM can enable or  
 587 disable the TPM, create AIK and set policies for the TPM. The process of taking ownership  
 588 must be a tightly controlled process with numerous checks and balances.

589 The protections around the taking of ownership include the enablement status, specific  
 590 persistent flags and the assertion of physical presence.

591 Control of the TPM revolves around knowledge of the TPM Owner authentication value.  
 592 Proving knowledge of authentication value proves the calling entity is the TPM Owner. It is  
 593 possible for more than one entity to know the TPM Owner authentication value.

594 The TPM provides no mechanisms to recover a lost TPM Owner authentication value.

595 Recovery from a lost or forgotten TPM Owner authentication value involves removing the old  
596 value and installing a new one. The removal of the old value invalidates all information  
597 associated with the previous value. Insertion of a new value can occur after the removal of  
598 the old value.

599 A disabled and inactive TPM that has no TPM Owner cannot install an owner.

600 To invalidate the TPM Owner authentication value use either TPM\_OwnerClear or  
601 TPM\_ForceClear.

#### 602 **End of informative comment**

603 1. The TPM Owner authentication value MUST be a 160-bits

604 2. The TPM Owner authentication value MUST be held in persistent storage

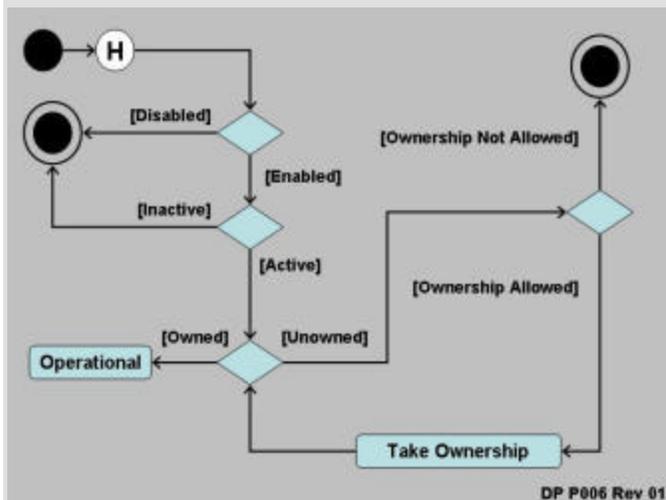
605 3. The TPM MUST have no mechanisms to recover a lost TPM Owner authentication value

### 606 **9.4.3.1 Enabling Ownership**

#### 607 **Informative comment**

608 The state that a TPM must be in to allow for TPM\_TakeOwnership to succeed is; enabled  
609 and fFlags.OwnershipEnabled TRUE.

610 The following diagram shows the states and the operational checks the TPM makes before  
611 allowing the insertion of the TPM Ownership value.



612

613

614 The TPM checks the disabled flag and then the inactive flag. If the flags indicate enabled  
615 then the TPM checks for the existence of a TPM Owner. If an Owner is not present the TPM  
616 then checks the OwnershipDisabled flag. If TRUE the TPM\_TakeOwnership command will  
617 execute.

618 While the TPM has no Owner but is enabled and active there is a limited subset of  
619 commands that will successfully execute.

620 The TPM\_SetOwnerInstall command toggles the state of the pFlags.OwnershipDisabled.  
621 TPM\_SetOwnerInstall requires the assertion of physical presence to execute.

#### 622 **End of informative comment**

623 **9.4.4 Transitioning Between Operational States**

624 **Start of informative comment**

625 The following table is a recap of the commands necessary to transition a TPM from one state  
626 to another.

State	TPM Owner Auth	Physical Presence	Persistence
Disabled to Enabled	TPM_OwnerSetDisable	TPM_PhysicalEnable	permanent
Enabled to Disabled	TPM_OwnerSetDisable	TPM_PhysicalDisable	permanent
Inactive to Active		TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated	permanent
Active to Inactive		TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated	permanent
Active to Inactive		TPM_SetTempDeactivated	boot cycle

627  
628 **End of informative comment**

629 **9.5 Clearing the TPM**

630 **Start of informative comment**

631 Clearing the TPM is the process of returning the TPM to factory defaults. It is possible the  
632 platform owner will change when in this state.

633 The commands to clear a TPM require either TPM Owner authentication or the assertion of  
634 physical presence.

635 The clear process performs the following tasks:

636 Invalidate the SRK. Once invalidated all information stored using the SRK is now  
637 unavailable. The invalidation does not change the blobs using the SRK rather there is no  
638 way to decrypt the blobs after invalidation of the SRK.

639 Invalidate tpmProof. tpmProof is a value that provides the uniqueness to values stored off of  
640 the TPM. By invalidating tpmProof all off TPM blobs will no longer load on the TPM.

641 Invalidate the TPM Owner authentication value. With the authentication value invalidated  
642 there are no TPM Owner authenticated commands that will execute.

643 Reset volatile and non-volatile data to manufacturer defaults.

644 The clear must not affect the EK.

645 Once cleared the TPM will return TPM\_NOSRK to commands that require authentication.

646 The PCR values are undefined after a clear operation. The TPM must go through TPM\_Init to  
647 properly set the PCR values.

648 Clear authentication comes from either the TPM owner or the assertion of physical  
649 presence. As the clear commands present a real opportunity for a denial of service attack  
650 there are mechanisms in place disabling the clear commands.

651 Disabling TPM\_OwnerClear uses the TPM\_DisableOwnerClear command. The state of ability  
652 to execute TPM\_OwnerClear is then held as one of the non-volatile flags.

653 Enablement of TPM\_ForceClear is held in the volatile disableForceClear flag.  
654 disableForceClear is set to FALSE during TPM\_Init. To disable the command software  
655 should issue the TPM\_DisableForceClear command.

656 During the TPM startup processing anyone with physical access to the machine can issue  
657 the TPM\_ForceClear command. This command performs the clear operations if it has not  
658 been disabled by vFlags.DisabledForceClear being TRUE.

659 The TPM can be configured to block all forms of clear operations. It is advisable to block  
660 clear operations to prevent an otherwise trivial denial-of-service attack. The assumption is  
661 the system startup code will issue the TPM\_DisableForceClear on each power-cycle after it  
662 is determined the TPM\_ForceClear command will not be necessary. The purpose of the  
663 TPM\_ForceClear command is to recover from the state where the Owner has lost or  
664 forgotten the TPM Owner-authentication-data.

665 The TPM\_ForceClear must only be possible when the issuer has physical access to the  
666 platform. The manufacturer of a platform determines the exact definition of physical access.

667 The commands to clear a TPM require either TPM Owner authentication, TPM\_OwnerClear,  
668 or the assertion of physical presence, TPM\_ForceClear.

669 **End of informative comment**

- 670 1. The TPM MUST support the clear operations.
- 671 a. Clear operations MUST be authenticated by either the TPM Owner or physical  
672 presence
  - 673 b. The TPM MUST support mechanisms to disable the clear operations
- 674 2. The clear operation MUST perform at least the following actions
- 675 a. SRK invalidation
  - 676 b. tpmProof invalidation
  - 677 c. TPM Owner authentication value invalidation
  - 678 d. Resetting non-volatile values to defaults
  - 679 e. Invalidation of volatile values
  - 680 f. Invalidation of internal resources
- 681 3. The clear operation must not affect the EK.

## 682 10. Physical Presence

### 683 **Start of informative comment**

684 This specification describes commands that require physical presence at the platform before  
685 the command will operate. Physical presence implies direct interaction by a person – i.e.  
686 Operator with the platform / TPM.

687 The type of controls that imply special privilege include:

- 688 • Clearing an existing Owner from the TPM,
- 689 • Temporarily deactivating a TPM,
- 690 • Temporarily disabling a TPM.

691 Physical presence implies a level of control and authorization to perform basic  
692 administrative tasks and to bootstrap management and access control mechanisms.

693 Protection of low-level administrative interfaces can be provided by physical and electrical  
694 methods; or by software; or a combination of both. The guiding principle for designers is the  
695 protection mechanism should be difficult or impossible to spoof by rogue software.  
696 Designers should take advantage of restricted states inherent in platform operation. For  
697 example, in a PC, software executed during the power-on self-test (POST) cannot be  
698 disturbed without physical access to the platform. Alternatively, a hardware switch  
699 indicating physical presence is very difficult to circumvent by rogue software or remote  
700 attackers.

701 TPM and platform manufacturers will determine the actual implementation approach. The  
702 strength of the protection mechanisms is determined by an evaluation of the platform.

703 Physical presence indication is implemented as a flag in volatile memory known as the  
704 PhysicalPresenceV flag. When physical presence is established (TRUE) several TPM  
705 commands are able to function. They include:

- 706 TPM\_PhysicalEnable,
- 707 TPM\_PhysicalDisable,
- 708 TPM\_PhysicalSetDeactivated,
- 709 TPM\_ForceClear,
- 710 TPM\_SetOwnerInstall,

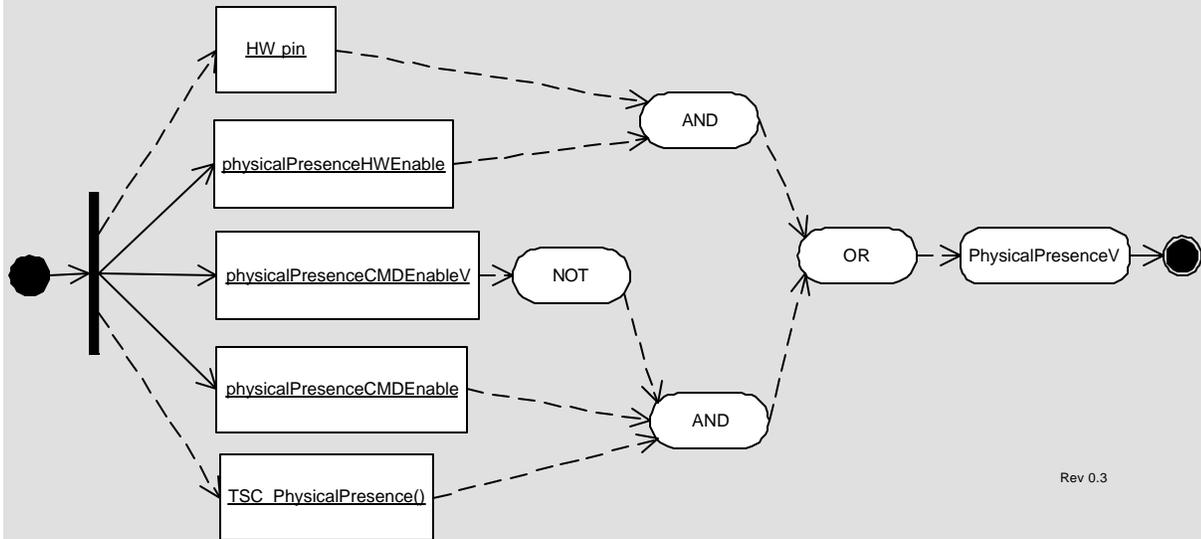
711 In order to execute these commands, the TPM must obtain unambiguous assurance that  
712 the operation is authorized by physical-presence at the platform. The command processor  
713 in the I/O component checks the physicalPresenceV flag before continuing processing of  
714 TPM command blocks. The volatile physicalPresenceV flag is set only while the Operator is  
715 indeed physically present.

716 TPM designers should take precautions to ensure testing of the physicalPresenceV flag  
717 value is not mask-able. For example, a special bus cycle could be used or a dedicated line  
718 implemented.

719 There is an exception to physical presence semantics that allows a remote entity the ability  
720 to assert physical presence when that entity is not physically present. The  
721 TSC\_PhysicalPresence command is used to change polarity of the physicalPresenceV flag.

722 Its use is heavily guarded. See sections describing the TPM Opt -In component; and Volatile  
723 and Non-volatile memory components.

724 The following diagram illustrates the flow of logic controlling updates to the  
725 physicalPresenceV flag:



Rev 0.3

726  
727 Figure 10:a - Physical Presence Control Logic

728 This diagram shows that the vFlags.physicalPresenceV flag may be updated by either a HW  
729 pin or through the TSC\_PhysicalPresence command, but gated by persistent control flags  
730 and a temporal lock. Observe, the reverse logic surrounding the use of  
731 TSC\_PhysicalPresence command. When the physicalPresenceCMDEnable flag is set, and  
732 the physicalPresenceCMDEnableV is not set, and the TSC\_PhysicalPresence command may  
733 execute.

734 The physicalPresenceV flag may be overridden by unambiguous physical presence.  
735 Conceptually, the use of dedicated electrical hardware providing a trusted path to the  
736 Operator has higher precedence than the physicalPresenceV flag value. Implementers  
737 should take this into consideration when implementing physical presence indicators.

738 **End of informative comment**

- 739 1. The requirement for physical presence **MUST** be met by the platform manufacturer  
740 using some physical mechanism.
- 741 2. It **SHALL** be impossible to intercept or subvert indication of physical presence to the  
742 TPM by the execution of software on the platform.

## 743 **11. Root of Trust for Reporting (RTR)**

### 744 **Start of informative comment**

745 The RTR is responsible for establishing platform identities, reporting platform  
746 configurations, protecting reported values and establishing a context for attesting to  
747 reported values. The RTR shares responsibility of protecting measurement digests with the  
748 RTS.

749 The interaction between the RTR and RTS is a critical component. The design and  
750 implementation of the interaction between the RTR and RTS should mitigate observation  
751 and tampering with the messages. It is strongly encouraged that the RTR and RTS  
752 implementation occur in the same package such there are no external observation points.  
753 For a silicon based TPM this would imply that the RTR and RTS are in the same silicon  
754 package with no external busses.

### 755 **End of informative comment**

- 756 1. An instantiation of the RTS and RTR SHALL do the following:
- 757 a. Be resistant to all forms of software attack and to the forms of physical attack  
758 implied by the platform's Protection Profile
  - 759 b. Supply an accurate digest of all sequences of presented integrity metrics

## 760 **11.1 Platform Identity**

### 761 **Start of informative comment**

762 The RTR is a cryptographic identity in use to distinguish and authenticate an individual  
763 TPM. The TPM uses the RTR to provide As the RTR is cryptographically unique the use of  
764 the RTR must only occur in controlled circumstances.

765 In the TPM, the Endorsement Key (EK) is the RTR.

766 Prior to any use of the TPM, the RTR must be instantiated. Instantiation may occur during  
767 TPM manufacturing or platform manufacturing. The business issues and manufacturing  
768 flow determines how a specific TPM and platform is personalized.

769 The EK is cryptographically unique and bound to the TPM.

770 The EK is only available for two operations: establishing the TPM Owner and establishing  
771 Attestation Identity Key (AIK) values and credentials. There is a prohibition on the use of the  
772 EK for any other operation.

### 773 **End of informative comment**

- 774 1. The RTR MUST have a cryptographic identity.
- 775 a. The cryptographic identity of the RTR is the Endorsement Key (EK).
- 776 2. The EK MUST be
- 777 a. Statistically unique
  - 778 b. Difficult to forge or counterfeit
  - 779 c. Verifiable during the AIK creation process
- 780 3. The EK SHALL only participate in

- 781 a. TPM Ownership insertion
- 782 b. AIK creation and verification

## 783 11.2 RTR to Platform Binding

### 784 Start of informative comment

785 When performing validation of the EK and the platform the challenger wishes to have  
786 knowledge of the binding of RTR to platform. The RTR is bound to a TPM hence if the  
787 platform can show the binding of TPM to platform the challenger can reasonably believe the  
788 RTR and platform binding.

789 The TPM cannot provide all of the information necessary for the challenger to trust in the  
790 binding. That information comes from the manufacturing process and occurs outside the  
791 control of the TPM.

### 792 End of informative comment

- 793 1. The EK is transitively bound to the Platform via the TPM as follows:
  - 794 a. An EK is bound to one and only one TPM (i.e., there is a one to one correspondence  
795 between an Endorsement Key and a TPM.)
  - 796 b. A TPM is bound to one and only one Platform. (i.e., there is a one to one  
797 correspondence between a TPM and a Platform.)
  - 798 c. Therefore, an EK is bound to a Platform. (i.e., there is a one to one correspondence  
799 between an Endorsement Key and a Platform.)

## 800 11.3 Platform Identity and Privacy Considerations

### 801 Start of informative comment

802 The uniqueness property of cryptographic identities raises concerns that use of that identity  
803 could result in aggregation of activity logs. Analysis of the aggregated activity could reveal  
804 personal information that a user of a platform would not otherwise approve for distribution  
805 to the aggregators. Both EK and AIK identities have this property.

806 To counter undesired aggregation, TCG encourages the use of domain specific AIK keys and  
807 restricts the use of the EK key. The platform owner controls generation and distribution of  
808 AIK public keys.

809 If a digital signature was performed by the EK, then any entity could track the use of the  
810 EK. So use of the EK as a signature is cryptographically sound, but this does not ensure  
811 privacy. Therefore, a mechanism to allow verifiers (human or machine) to determine that  
812 the TPM really signed the message without using the EK is required.

### 813 End of informative comment

## 814 11.4 Attestation Identity Keys

### 815 Start of informative comment

816 An Attestation Identity Key (AIK) is an alias for the EK. AIK provide signatures and not  
817 encryption. The TPM can create a virtually unlimited number of AIK.

818 The AIK must contain identification such that the TPM can properly enforce the restrictions  
819 placed on an AIK.

820 The AIK is an asymmetric key pair. For interoperability, the AIK is an RSA 2048-bit key. The  
821 TPM must protect the private portion of the asymmetric key and ensure that the value is  
822 never exposed.

823 The AIK only signs PCR data. The TPM must enforce this restriction. If the AIK did sign  
824 additional information, it is possible for an attacker to create a block of data that appears to  
825 be a PCR value. By enforcing the PCR restriction this attack is never possible.

826 **End of informative comment**

827 1. The TPM MUST permanently mark an AIK such that all subsequent uses of the AIK the  
828 AIK restrictions are enforced.

829 2. An AIK MUST be:

830 a. Statistically unique

831 b. Difficult to forge or counterfeit

832 c. Verifiable to challengers

833 3. For interoperability the AIK MUST be

834 a. An RSA 2048-bit key

835 4. The AIK MUST only sign data generated by the TPM

836 **11.4.1 AIK Creation**

837 **Start of informative comment**

838 As the AIK is an alias for the EK, the AIK creation process requires TPM Owner  
839 authorization. The process actually requires two TPM Owner authorizations; creation and  
840 credential activation.

841 The credential creation process is outside the control of the TPM; however, the entity  
842 identification that will create the credential must occur during the creation process.

843 **End of informative comment**

844 1. The TPM Owner MUST authorize the AIK creation process.

845 2. The TPM MUST use a protected function to perform the AIK creation.

846 3. The TPM Owner MUST indicate the entity that will provide the AIK credential as part of  
847 the AIK creation process.

848 4. The TPM Owner MAY indicate that NO credential will ever be created. If the TPM Owner  
849 does indicate that no credential will be provided the TPM MUST ensure that no  
850 credential can be created.

851 5. The TTP MAY apply policies to determine if the presented AIK should be granted a  
852 credential.

853 6. The credential request package MUST be useable by only the Privacy CA selected by the  
854 TPM Owner.

- 855 7. The AIK credential MUST be only obtainable by the TPM that created the AIK credential  
856 request.

## 857 **11.4.2 AIK Storage**

### 858 **Start of informative comment**

859 The AIK may be stored on some general-purpose storage device.

860 When held outside of the TPM the AIK sensitive data must be encrypted and integrity  
861 protected.

### 862 **End of informative comment**

- 863 1. When held outside of the TPM AIK encryption and integrity protection MUST protect the  
864 AIK sensitive information
- 865 2. The migration of AIK from one TPM to another MUST be prohibited

866 **12. Root of Trust for Storage (RTS)**

867 **Start of informative comment**

868 The RTS provides protection on data in use by the TPM but held in external storage devices.  
869 The RTS provides confidentiality and integrity for the external blobs.

870 The RTS also provides the mechanism to ensure that the release of information only occurs  
871 in a named environment. The naming of an environment uses the PCR selection to  
872 enumerate the values.

873 Data protected by the RTS can migrate to other TPM.

874 **End of informative comment**

- 875 1. The number and size of values held by the RTS SHOULD be limited only by the volume  
876 of storage available on the platform
- 877 2. The TPM MUST ensure that TPM\_PERMANENT\_DATA -> tpmProof is only inserted into  
878 TPM internally generated and non-migratable information.

879 **12.1 Loading and Unloading Blobs**

880 **Start of informative comment**

881 The TPM provides several commands to store and load RTS controlled data.

	Class	Command	Analog	Comment
1	Data / Internal / TPM	TPM_MakeIdentity	TPM_ActivateIdentity	Special purpose data
2	Data / External / TPM	TSS_Bind	TPM_Unbind	
3	Data / Internal / PCR	TPM_Seal	TPM_Unseal	
4	Data / External / PCR			
5	Key / Internal / TPM	TPM_CreateWrapKey	TPM_LoadKey	
6	Key / External / TPM	TSS_WrapKey	TPM_LoadKey	
7	Key / Internal / PCR			
8	Key / External / PCR	TSS_WrapKeyToPcr	TPM_LoadKey	

## 882 13. Transport Sessions and Authorization Protocols

### 883 **Start of informative comment**

884 The purpose of the authorization protocols and mechanisms is to prove to the TPM that the  
885 requestor has permission to perform a function and use some object. The proof comes from  
886 the knowledge of a shared secret.

887 AuthData is available for the TPM Owner and each entity (keys, for example) that the TPM  
888 controls. The AuthData for the TPM Owner and the SRK are held within the TPM itself and  
889 the AuthData for other entities are held with the entity.

890 The TPM Owner AuthData allows the Owner to prove ownership of the TPM. Proving  
891 ownership of the TPM does not immediately allow all operations – the TPM Owner is not a  
892 “super user” and additional AuthData must be provided for each entity or operation that  
893 has protection.

894 The TPM treats knowledge of the AuthData as complete proof of ownership of the entity. No  
895 other checks are necessary. The requestor (any entity that wishes to execute a command on  
896 the TPM or use a specific entity) may have additional protections and requirements where  
897 he or she (or it) saves the AuthData; however, the TPM places no additional requirements.

898 There are three protocols to securely pass a proof of knowledge of AuthData from requestor  
899 to TPM; the “Object-Independent Authorization Protocol” (OIAP), the “Object-Specific  
900 Authorization Protocol” (OSAP) and the “Delegate-Specific Authorization Protocol” (DSAP).  
901 The OIAP supports multiple authorization sessions for arbitrary entities. The OSAP  
902 supports an authentication session for a single entity and enables the confidential  
903 transmission of new authorization information. The DSAP supports the delegation of owner  
904 or entity authorization.

905 New authorization information is inserted by the “AuthData Insertion Protocol” (ADIP)  
906 during the creation of an entity. The “AuthData Change Protocol” (ADCP) and the  
907 “Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol” (AACP) allow the changing of the AuthData for  
908 an entity. The protocol definitions allow expansion of protocol types to additional TCG  
909 required protocols and vendor specific protocols.

910 The protocols use a “rolling nonce” paradigm. This requires that a nonce from one side be in  
911 use only for a message and its reply. For instance, the TPM would create a nonce and send  
912 that on a reply. The requestor would receive that nonce and then include it in the next  
913 request. The TPM would validate that the correct nonce was in the request and then create  
914 a new nonce for the reply. This mechanism is in place to prevent replay attacks and man-  
915 in-the-middle attacks.

916 The basic protocols do not provide long-term protection of AuthData that is the hash of a  
917 password or other low-entropy entities. The TPM designer and application writer must  
918 supply additional protocols if protection of these types of data is necessary.

919 The design criterion of the protocols is to allow for ownership authentication, command and  
920 parameter authentication and prevent replay and man-in-the-middle attacks.

921 The passing of the AuthData, nonces and other parameters must follow specific guidelines  
922 so that commands coming from different computer architectures will interoperate properly.

### 923 **End of informative comment**

924 1. AuthData MUST use one of the following protocols

- 925 a. OIAP
- 926 b. OSAP
- 927 c. DSAP
- 928 2. Entity creation MUST use one of the following protocols
- 929 a. ADIP
- 930 3. Changing AuthData MUST use one of the following protocols
- 931 a. ADCP
- 932 b. AACP
- 933 4. The TPM MAY support additional protocols to authenticate, insert and change
- 934 AuthData.
- 935 5. When a command has more than one AuthData value
- 936 a. Each AuthData MUST use the same SHA-1 of the parameters
- 937 6. Keys MAY specify authDataUsage -> TPM\_AUTH\_NEVER
- 938 a. If the caller changes the tag from TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_AUTH1\_xxx to
- 939 TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_XXX the TPM SHALL ignore the AuthData values
- 940 b. If the caller leaves the tag as TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_AUTH1
- 941 i. The TPM will compute the AuthData based on the value store in the AuthData
- 942 location within the key, IGNORING the state of the AuthDataUsage flag.
- 943 c. Users may choose to use a well-known value for the AuthData when setting
- 944 AuthDataUsage to NEVER.
- 945 d. If a key has AuthDataUsage set to TPM\_AUTH\_ALWAYS but is received in a
- 946 command with the tag TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_COMMAND, the command MUST return an
- 947 error code.
- 948 7. For commands that normally have 2 authorization sessions, if the tag specifies only one
- 949 in the parameter array, then the first session listed is ignored (authDataUsage must be
- 950 NEVER for this key) and the incoming session data is used for the second auth session
- 951 in the list.
- 952 8. Keys MAY specify AuthDataUsage -> TPM\_AUTH\_PRIV\_USE\_ONLY
- 953 a. If the key used in a command to read/access the public portion of the key (e.g.
- 954 TPM\_CertifyKey, TPM\_GetPubKey)
- 955 i. If the caller changes the tag from TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_AUTH1\_xxx to
- 956 TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_XXX the TPM SHALL ignore the AuthData values
- 957 ii. If the caller leaves the tag as TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_AUTH1
- 958 iii. The TPM will compute the AuthData based on the value store in the AuthData
- 959 location within the key, IGNORING the state of the AuthDataUsage flag
- 960 b. else if the key used in command to read/access the private portion of the key(e.g.
- 961 TPM\_Sign)

- 962 i. If the tag is TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_COMMAND, the command MUST return an error  
963 code.

## 964 13.1 Authorization Session Setup

### 965 **Start of informative comment**

966 The TPM provides two protocols for authorizing the use of entities without revealing the  
967 AuthData on the network or the connection to the TPM. In both cases, the protocol  
968 exchanges nonce-data so that both sides of the transaction can compute a hash using  
969 shared secrets and nonce-data. Each side generates the hash value and can compare to the  
970 value transmitted. Network listeners cannot directly infer the AuthData from the hashed  
971 objects sent over the network.

972 The first protocol is the Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP), which allows the  
973 exchange of nonces with a specific TPM. Once an OIAP session is established, its nonces  
974 can be used to authorize the use of any entity managed by the TPM. The session can live  
975 indefinitely until either party requests the session termination. The TPM\_OIAP function  
976 starts the OIAP session.

977 The second protocol is the Object Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)". The OSAP allows  
978 establishment of an authentication session for a single entity. The session creates nonces  
979 that can authorize multiple commands without additional session-establishment overhead,  
980 but is bound to a specific entity. The TPM\_OSAP command starts the OSAP session. The  
981 TPM\_OSAP specifies the entity to which the authorization is bound.

982 Most commands allow either form of authorization protocol. In general, however, the OIAP  
983 is preferred – it is more generally useful because it allows usage of the same session to  
984 provide authorization for different entities. The OSAP is, however, necessary for operations  
985 that set or reset AuthData.

986 OIAP sessions were designed for reasons of efficiency; only one setup process is required for  
987 potentially many authorizations.

988 An OSAP session is doubly efficient because only one setup process is required for  
989 potentially many authorization calculations and the entity AuthData secret is required only  
990 once. This minimizes exposure of the AuthData secret and can minimize human interaction  
991 in the case where a person supplies the AuthData information. The disadvantage of the  
992 OSAP is that a distinct session needs to be setup for each entity that requires authorization.  
993 The OSAP creates an ephemeral secret that is used throughout the session instead of the  
994 entity AuthData secret. The ephemeral secret can be used to provide confidentiality for the  
995 introduction of new AuthData during the creation of new entities. Termination of the OSAP  
996 occurs in two ways. Either side can request session termination (as usual) but the TPM  
997 forces the termination of an OSAP session after use of the ephemeral secret for the  
998 introduction of new AuthData.

999 For both the OSAP and the OIAP, session setup is independent of the commands that are  
:000 authorized. In the case of OIAP, the requestor sends the TPM\_OIAP command, and with the  
:001 response generated by the TPM, can immediately begin authorizing object actions. The  
:002 OSAP is very similar, and starts with the requestor sending a TPM\_OSAP operation, naming  
:003 the entity to which the authorization session should be bound.

:004 The DSAP session is to provide delegated authorization information.

:005 All session types use a “rolling nonce” paradigm. This means that the TPM creates a new  
:006 nonce value each time the TPM receives a command using the session.

:007 Example OIAP and OSAP sessions are used to illustrate session setup and use. The  
:008 fictitious command named TPM\_Example occupies the place where an ordinary TPM  
:009 command might be used, but does not have command specific parameters. The session  
:010 connects to a key object within the TPM. The key contains AuthData that will be used to  
:011 secure the session.

:012 There could be as many as 2 authorization sessions applied to the execution of a single TPM  
:013 command or as few as 0. The number of sessions used is determined by TCG 1.2 Command  
:014 Specification and is indicated by the command ordinal parameter.

:015 It is also possible to secure authorization sessions using ephemeral shared-secrets. Rather  
:016 than using AuthData contained in the stored object (e.g. key), the AuthData is supplied as a  
:017 parameter to OIAP or OSAP session creation. In the examples below the key.usageAuth  
:018 parameter is replaced by the ephemeral secret.

:019 **End of informative comment**

## :020 **13.2 Parameter Declarations for OIAP and OSAP Examples**

:021 **Start of informative comment**

:022 To follow OIAP and OSAP protocol examples (Table 13:c and Table 13:d), the reader should  
:023 become familiar with the parameters declared in Table 13:a and Table 13:b.

:024 Several conventions are used in the parameter tables that may facilitate readability.

:025 The Param column (Table 13:a) identifies the sequence in which parameters are packaged  
:026 into a command or response message as well as the size in bytes of the parameter value. If  
:027 this entry in the row is blank, that parameter is not included in the message. <> in the size  
:028 column means that the size of the element is variable. It is defined either explicitly by the  
:029 preceding parameter, or implicitly by the parameter type.

:030 The HMAC column similarly identifies the parameters that are included in HMAC  
:031 calculations. This column also indicates the default parameters that are included in the  
:032 audit log. Exceptions are noted under the specific ordinal, e.g. TPM\_ExecuteTransport.

:033 The Type column identifies the TCG data type corresponding to the passed value. An  
:034 encapsulation of the parameter type is not part of the command message.

:035 The Name column is a fictitious variable name that aids in following the examples and  
:036 descriptions.

:037 The double-lined row separator distinguishes authorization session parameters from  
:038 command parameters. In Table 13:a the TPM\_Example command has three parameters;  
:039 keyHandle, inArgOne and inArgTwo. The tag, paramSize and ordinal parameters are  
:040 message header values describing contents of a command message. The parameters below  
:041 the double-lined row are OIAP / OSAP /DSAP or transport authorization session related. If  
:042 a second authorization session were used, the table would show a second authorization  
:043 section delineated by a second double-lined row. The authorization session parameters  
:044 identify shared-secret values, session nonces, session digest and flags.

:045 In this example, a single authorization session is used signaled by the  
:046 TPM\_TAG\_RQU\_AUTH1\_COMMAND tag.

:047 For an OIAP or transport session, the TPM\_AUTHDATA description column specifies the  
:048 HMAC key.

:049 For an OSAP or DSAP session, the HMAC key is the shared secret that was calculated  
:050 during the session setup, not the key specified in the description. The key specified in the  
:051 description was previously used in the shared secret calculation.

Param		HMAC		Type	Name	Description
#	Sz	#	Sz			
1	2			TPM_TAG	tag	TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_COMMAND
2	4			UINT32	paramSize	Total number of input bytes including paramSize and tag
3	4	1S	4	TPM_COMMAND_CODE	ordinal	Command ordinal, fixed value of TPM_Example
4	4			TPM_KEY_HANDLE	keyHandle	Handle of a loaded key.
5	1	2S	1	BOOL	inArgOne	The first input argument
6	20	3S	20	UINT32	inArgTwo	The second input argument.
7	4			TPM_AUTHHANDLE	authHandle	The authorization handle used for keyHandle authorization.
		2H1	20	TPM_NONCE	authLastNonceEven	Even nonce previously generated by TPM to cover inputs
8	20	3 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceOdd	Nonce generated by system associated with authHandle
9	1	4 H1	1	BOOL	continueAuthSession	The continue use flag for the authorization handle
10	20			TPM_AUTHDATA	inAuth	The AuthData digest for inputs and keyHandle. HMAC key: key.usageAuth.

:052

:053

**Table 13:a - Authorization Protocol Input Parameters**

Param		HMAC		Type	Name	Description
#	Sz	#	Sz			
1	2			TPM_TAG	Tag	TPM_TAG_RSP_AUTH1_COMMAND
2	4			UINT32	paramSize	Total number of output bytes including paramSize and tag
3	4	1S	4	TPM_RESULT	returnCode	The return code of the operation. See section 4.3.
		2S	4	TPM_COMMAND_CODE	ordinal	Command ordinal, fixed value of TPM_Example
4	4	3S	4	UINT32	outArgOne	Output argument
5	20	2 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceEven	Even nonce newly generated by TPM to cover outputs
		3 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceOdd	Nonce generated by system associated with authHandle
6	1	4 H1	1	BOOL	continueAuthSession	Continue use flag, TRUE if handle is still active
7	20			TPM_AUTHDATA	resAuth	The AuthData digest for the returned parameters. HMAC key: key.usageAuth.

:054

:055

**Table 13:b - Authorization Protocol Output Parameters**

:056

:057 **End of informative comment**

:058 **13.2.1 Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP)**

:059 **Start of informative comment**

:060 The purpose of this section is to describe the authorization-related actions of a TPM when it  
:061 receives a command that has been authorized with the OIAP protocol. OIAP uses the  
:062 TPM\_OIAP command to create the authorization session.

:063 Many commands use OIAP authorization. The following description is therefore necessarily  
:064 abstract. A fictitious TPM command, TPM\_Example is used to represent ordinary TPM  
:065 commands.

:066 Assume that a TPM user wishes to send command TPM\_Example. This is an authorized  
:067 command that uses the key denoted by keyHandle. The user must know the AuthData for  
:068 keyHandle (key.usageAuth) as this is the entity that requires authorization and this secret  
:069 is used in the authorization calculation. Let us assume for this example that the caller of  
:070 TPM\_Example does not need to authorize the use of keyHandle for more than one  
:071 command. This use model points to the selection of the OIAP as the authorization protocol.

:072 For the TPM\_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to  
:073 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters  
:074 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

:075 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,  
:076 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,  
:077 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:  
:078 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the  
:079 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

:080 There are two even nonces used to execute TPM\_Example, the one generated as part of the  
:081 TPM\_OIAP command (labeled authLastNonceEven below) and the one generated with the  
:082 output arguments of TPM\_Example (labeled as nonceEven below).

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OIAP	TPM_OIAP	→	Create session Create authHandle Associate session and authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven	authHandle, authLastNonceEven	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (key.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd	→	TPM retrieves key.usageAuth (key must have been previously loaded) Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (key.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode

	continueAuthSession inAuth		Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC( key.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC( key.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

:083 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session.  
 :084 For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same example command is used  
 :085 (ordinal = TPM\_Example). However, a different key (newKey) with its own secret  
 :086 (newKey.usageAuth) is to be operated on. To re-use the previous session, the  
 :087 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

:088 The previous example shows the command execution reusing an existing authorization  
 :089 session. The parameters created and the wire formats of all of the information.

:090 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the  
 :091 output parameters from the first protocol example

:092

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (newKey.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	TPM retrieves newKey.usageAuth (newKey must have been previously loaded) Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (newKey.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(newKey.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC( newKey.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

:093 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions. Suppose,  
 :094 however, that the TPM user no longer requires the authorization session. There are three  
 :095 possibilities in this case:

:096 The user issues a TPM\_Terminate\_Handle command to the TPM (section 5.3).

:097 The input argument `continueAuthSession` can be set to `FALSE` for the last command. In  
:098 this case, the output `continueAuthSession` value will be `FALSE`.

:099 In some cases, the TPM automatically terminates the authorization session regardless of the  
:100 input value of `continueAuthSession`. In this case as well, the output `continueAuthSession`  
:101 value will be `FALSE`.

:102 When an authorization session is terminated for any reason, the TPM invalidates the  
:103 session's handle and terminates the session's thread (releases all resources allocated to the  
:104 session).

:105 **End of informative comment**

:106

### :107 **OIAP Actions**

- :108 1. The TPM MUST verify that the authorization handle (H, say) referenced in the command  
:109 points to a valid session. If it does not, the TPM returns the error code  
:110 `TPM_INVALID_AUTHHANDLE`
- :111 2. The TPM SHALL retrieve the latest version of the caller's nonce (`nonceOdd`) and  
:112 `continueAuthSession` flag from the input parameter list, and store it in internal TPM  
:113 memory with the authSession 'H'.
- :114 3. The TPM SHALL retrieve the latest version of the TPM's nonce stored with the  
:115 authorization session H (`authLastNonceEven`) computed during the previously executed  
:116 command.
- :117 4. The TPM MUST retrieve the secret `AuthData` (`SecretE`, say) of the target entity. The  
:118 entity and its secret must have been previously loaded into the TPM.
- :119 5. The TPM SHALL perform a HMAC calculation using the entity secret data, ordinal, input  
:120 command parameters and authorization parameters according to previously specified  
:121 normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- :122 6. The TPM SHALL compare HM to the `AuthData` value received in the input parameters. If  
:123 they are different, the TPM returns the error code `TPM_AUTHFAIL` if the authorization  
:124 session is the first session of a command, or `TPM_AUTH2FAIL` if the authorization  
:125 session is the second session of a command. Otherwise, the TPM executes the command  
:126 which (for this example) produces an output that requires authentication.
- :127 7. The TPM SHALL generate a nonce (`nonceEven`).
- :128 8. The TPM creates an HMAC digest to authenticate the return code, return values and  
:129 authorization parameters to the same entity secret according to previously specified  
:130 normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- :131 9. The TPM returns the return code, output parameters, authorization parameters and  
:132 `AuthData` digest.
- :133 10. If the output `continueUse` flag is `FALSE`, then the TPM SHALL terminate the session.  
:134 Future references to H will return an error.

## :135 **13.3 Object-Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)**

:136 **Start of informative comment**

:137 This section describes the actions of a TPM when it receives a TPM command via OSAP  
:138 session. Many TPM commands may be sent to the TPM via an OSAP session. Therefore, the  
:139 following description is necessarily abstract.

:140 The OSAP session is initialized through the creation of an ephemeral secret which is used to  
:141 protect session traffic. Sessions are created using the TPM\_OSAP command. This section  
:142 illustrates OSAP using a fictitious command called TPM\_Example.

:143 Assume that a TPM user wishes to send the TPM\_Example command to the TPM. The  
:144 keyHandle signifies that an OSAP session is being used and has the value "Auth1". The  
:145 user must know the AuthData for keyHandle (key.usageAuth) as this is the entity that  
:146 requires authorization and this secret is used in the authorization calculation.

:147 Let us assume that the sender needs to use this key multiple times but does not wish to  
:148 obtain the key secret more than once. This might be the case if the usage AuthData were  
:149 derived from a typed password. This use model points to the selection of the OSAP as the  
:150 authorization protocol.

:151 For the TPM\_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to  
:152 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters  
:153 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

:154 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,  
:155 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,  
:156 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:  
:157 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the  
:158 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

:159 In addition to the two even nonces generated by the TPM (authLastNonceEven and  
:160 nonceEven) that are used for TPM\_OIAP, there is a third, labeled nonceEvenOSAP that is  
:161 used to generate the shared secret. For every even nonce, there is also an odd nonce  
:162 generated by the system.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OSAP	TPM_OSAP keyHandle nonceOddOSAP	→	Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Save the ADIP encryption scheme with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(key.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save keyHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(key.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)

	keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth		Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode. If TPM_Example requires ADIP encryption, use the algorithm indicated when the OSAP session was set up. Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC( sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

:163 Table 13:c - Example OSAP Session

:164 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session  
 :165 to operate on the same key. For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same  
 :166 ordinal is to be used (TPM\_Example). To re-use the previous session, the  
 :167 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

:168 The following table shows the command execution, the parameters created and the wire  
 :169 formats of all of the information.

:170 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the  
 :171 output parameters from the first execution of TPM\_Example.

:172

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC( sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

:173 Table 13:d - Example Re-used OSAP Session

:174 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions or terminate it  
 :175 in the ways that have been described above in TPM\_OIAP. Note that termination of the  
 :176 OSAP session causes the TPM to destroy the shared secret.

:177 **End of informative comment**

:178 **OSAP Actions**

- :179 1. The TPM MUST have been able to retrieve the shared secret (Shared, say) of the target  
 :180 entity when the authorization session was established with TPM\_OSAP. The entity and  
 :181 its secret must have been previously loaded into the TPM.
- :182 2. The TPM MUST verify that the authorization handle (H, say) referenced in the command  
 :183 points to a valid session. If it does not, the TPM returns the error code  
 :184 TPM\_INVALID\_AUTHHANDLE.

- :185 3. The TPM MUST calculate the HMAC (HM1, say) of the command parameters according  
:186 to previously specified normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- :187 4. The TPM SHALL compare HM1 to the AuthData value received in the command. If they  
:188 are different, the TPM returns the error code TPM\_AUTHFAIL if the authorization session  
:189 is the first session of a command, or TPM\_AUTH2FAIL if the authorization session is the  
:190 second session of a command., the TPM executes command C1 which produces an  
:191 output (O, say) that requires authentication and uses a particular return code (RC, say).
- :192 5. The TPM SHALL generate the latest version of the even nonce (nonceEven).
- :193 6. The TPM MUST calculate the HMAC (HM2) of the return parameters according to  
:194 previously specified normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- :195 7. The TPM returns HM2 in the parameter list.
- :196 8. The TPM SHALL retrieve the continue flag from the received command. If the flag is  
:197 FALSE, the TPM SHALL terminate the session and destroy the thread associated with  
:198 handle H.
- :199 9. If the shared secret was used to provide confidentiality for data in the received  
:200 command, the TPM SHALL terminate the session and destroy the thread associated with  
:201 handle H.
- :202 10. Each time that access to an entity (key) is authorized using OSAP, the TPM MUST  
:203 ensure that the OSAP shared secret is that derived from the entity using TPM\_OSAP.

## :204 **13.4 Authorization Session Handles**

### :205 **Start of informative comment**

:206 The TPM generates authorization handles to allow for the tracking of information regarding  
:207 a specific authorization invocation.

:208 The TPM saves information specific to the authorization, such as the nonce values,  
:209 ephemeral secrets and type of authentication in use.

:210 The TPM may create any internal representation of the handle that is appropriate for the  
:211 TPM's design. The requestor always uses the handle in the authorization structure to  
:212 indicate authorization structure in use.

:213 The TPM must support a minimum of two concurrent authorization handles. The use of  
:214 these handles is to allow the Owner to have an authorization active in addition to an active  
:215 authorization for an entity.

:216 To ensure garbage collection and the proper removal of security information, the requestor  
:217 should terminate all handles. Termination of the handle uses the continue-use flag to  
:218 indicate to the TPM that the handle should be terminated.

:219 Termination of a handle instructs the TPM to perform garbage collection on all AuthData.  
:220 Garbage collection includes the deletion of the ephemeral secret.

### :221 **End of informative comment**

- :222 1. The TPM MUST support authorization handles. The TPM MUST support a minimum of  
:223 three concurrent authorization handles.

- :224 2. The TPM MUST support authorization-handle termination. The termination includes  
:225 secure deletion of all authorization session information.

### :226 **13.5 Authorization-Data Insertion Protocol (ADIP)**

#### :227 **Start of informative comment**

:228 The creation of AuthData is the responsibility of the entity owner. He or she may use  
:229 whatever process he or she wishes. The transmission of the AuthData from the owner to the  
:230 TPM requires confidentiality and integrity. The encryption of the AuthData meets these  
:231 requirements. The confidentiality and integrity requirements assume the insertion of the  
:232 AuthData occurs over a network. While local insertions of the data would not require these  
:233 measures, the protocol is established to be consistent with both local and remote insertions.

:234 When the requestor is sending the AuthData to the TPM, the command to load the data  
:235 requires the authorization of the entity owner. For example, to create a new TPM ID and set  
:236 its AuthData requires the AuthData of the TPM Owner.

:237 The confidentiality of the transmission comes from the encryption of the AuthData, and the  
:238 integrity comes from the ability of the owner to verify that the authorization is being sent to  
:239 a TPM and that only a specific TPM can decrypt the data.

:240 The mandatory mechanism uses the following features of the TPM, OSAP and HMAC.

:241 The creation of a new entity requires the authorization of the entity owner. When the  
:242 requestor starts the creation process, the creator must use OSAP.

:243 The creator builds an encryption key using a SHA-1 hash of the shared secret from the  
:244 OSAP mechanism and the nonce (authLastNonceEven) returned by the TPM from the  
:245 TPM\_OSAP command.

:246 The creator encrypts the new AuthData using the key from the previous step as a one-time  
:247 pad with XOR and then sends this encrypted data along with the creation request to the  
:248 TPM.

:249 The TPM may support AES as an additional ADIP encryption algorithm.

:250 The TPM decrypts the AuthData using the OSAP shared secret and authLastNonceEven,  
:251 creates the new entity.

:252 The TPM includes the sends the reply back to the creator using the new AuthData as the  
:253 secret value of the HMAC.

:254 The creator believes that the OSAP creates a shared secret known only to the creator and  
:255 the TPM. The TPM believes that the creator is the entity owner by their knowledge of the  
:256 parent entity AuthData. The creator believes that the process completed correctly and that  
:257 the AuthData is correct because the HMAC will only verify with the OSAP secret.

:258 The ADIP allows for the creation of new entities and the secure insertion of the new entity  
:259 AuthData. The transmission of the new AuthData uses encryption with the key being a  
:260 shared secret of an OSAP session.

:261 The OSAP session must be created using the owner of the new entity.

:262 In the following example, we want to send the previously described command  
:263 TPM\_EXAMPLE to create a new entity. In the example, we assume there is a third input  
:264 parameter newAuth, and that one of the input parameters is named parentHandle to

:265 reference the parent for the new entity (TPM Owner in some circumstances such as the SRK  
:266 and its children, otherwise a key).

:267

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OSAP	TPM_OSAP parentHandle nonceOddOSAP	→	Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Save the ADIP encryption scheme with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(parent.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save parentHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(parent.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute input parameter newAuth = XOR(entityAuthData, SHA1(sharedSecret, authLastNonceEven)) Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo newAuth authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Compute entityAuthData = XOR( newAuth, SHA1(sharedSecret, authLastNonceEven)) Execute TPM_Example, create entity and build returnCode. If TPM_Example requires ADIP encryption, use the algorithm indicated when the OSAP session was set up. Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)

:268

<p>Save nonceEven HM = HMAC( sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.</p>	<p>tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth</p>	<p>←</p>	<p>Return output parameters Destroy auth session associated with authHandle</p>
---	---	----------	---

:269 Table 13:e - Example ADIP Session

:270

:271 **End of informative comment**

- :272 1. The TPM MUST enable ADIP by using the OSAP. The TPM MUST encrypt the AuthData  
:273 for the new entity by performing an XOR using the shared secret created by the OSAP.
- :274 2. The TPM MUST destroy the OSAP session whenever a new entity is created.

:275 **13.6 AuthData Change Protocol (ADCP)**

:276 **Start of informative comment**

:277 All entities from the Owner to the SRK to individual keys and data blobs have AuthData.  
:278 This data may need to change at some point in time after the entity creation. The ADCP  
:279 allows the entity owner to change the AuthData. The entity owner of a wrapped key is the  
:280 owner of the parent key.

:281 A requirement is that the owner must remember the old AuthData. The only mechanism to  
:282 change the AuthData when the entity owner forgets the current value is to delete the entity  
:283 and then recreate it.

:284 To protect the data from exposure to eavesdroppers or other attackers, the AuthData uses  
:285 the same encryption mechanism in use during the ADIP.

:286 Changing AuthData requires opening two authentication handles. The first handle  
:287 authenticates the entity owner (or parent) and the right to load the entity. This first handle  
:288 is an OSAP and supplies the data to encrypt the new AuthData according to the ADIP  
:289 protocol. The second handle can be either an OIAP or an OSAP, it authorizes access to the  
:290 entity for which the AuthData is to be changed.

:291 The AuthData in use to generate the OSAP shared secret must be the AuthData of the  
:292 parent of the entity to which the change will be made.

:293 When changing the AuthData for the SRK, the first handle OSAP must be setup using the  
:294 TPM Owner AuthData. This is because the SRK does not have a parent, per se.

:295 If the SRKAuth data is known to userA and userB, userA can snoop on userB while userB  
:296 is changing the AuthData for a child of the SRK, and deduce the child's newAuth.  
:297 Therefore, if SRKAuth is a well known value, TPM\_ChangeAuthAsymStart and  
:298 TPM\_ChangeAuthAsymFinish are preferred over TPM\_ChangeAuth when changing  
:299 AuthData for children of the SRK.

:300 This applies to all children of the SRK, including TPM identities.

:301 **End of informative comment**

- :302 1. Changing AuthData for the TPM SHALL require authorization of the current TPM Owner.  
:303 2. Changing AuthData for the SRK SHALL require authorization of the TPM Owner.  
:304 3. If SRKAuth is a well known value, TPM\_ChangeAuth SHOULD NOT be used to change  
:305 the AuthData value of a child of the SRK, including the TPM identities.  
:306 4. All other entities SHALL require authorization of the parent entity.

### :307 **13.7 Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol (AACP)**

#### :308 **Start of informative comment**

:309 This is now deprecated. Use the normal change session inside of a transport session with  
:310 confidentiality.

:311 This asymmetric change protocol allows the entity owner to change entity authorization,  
:312 under the parent's execution authorization, to a value of which the parent has no  
:313 knowledge.

:314 In contrast, the TPM\_ChangeAuth command uses the parent entity AuthData to create the  
:315 shared secret that encrypts the new AuthData for an entity. This creates a situation where  
:316 the parent entity ALWAYS knows the AuthData for entities in the tree below the parent.  
:317 There may be instances where this knowledge is not a good policy.

:318 This asymmetric change process requires two commands and the use of an authorization  
:319 session.

#### :320 **End of informative comment**

- :321 1. Changing AuthData for the SRK SHALL involve authorization by the TPM Owner.  
:322 2. If SRKAuth is a well known value,  
:323 3. TPM\_ChangeAuthAsymStart and TPM\_ChangeAuthAsymFinish SHOULD be used to  
:324 change the AuthData value of a child of the SRK, including the TPM identities.  
:325 4. All other entities SHALL involve authorization of the parent entity.

:326 **14. FIPS 140 Physical Protection**

:327 **Start of informative comment**

:328 The FIPS 140-2 program provides assurance that a cryptographic device performs properly.  
:329 It is appropriate for TPM vendors to attempt to obtain FIPS 140-2 certification.

:330 The TPM design should be such that the TPM vendor has the opportunity of obtaining FIPS  
:331 140-2 certification.

:332 **End of informative comment**

:333 **14.1 TPM Profile for FIPS Certification**

:334 **Start of informative comment**

:335 The FIPS mode of the TPM does require some changes over the normal TPM. These changes  
:336 are listed here such that there is a central point of determining the necessary FIPS changes.

:337 **Key creation and use**

:338 TPM\_LoadKey, TPM\_CMK\_CreateKey and TPM\_CreateWrapKey changed to disallow the  
:339 creation or loading of AUTH\_NEVER, legacy and keys less than 1024 bits.  
:340 TPM\_MakeIdentity changed to disallow AUTH\_NEVER.

:341 **End of informative comment**

- :342 1. Each TPM Protected Capability MUST be designed such that some profile of the  
:343 Capability is capable of obtaining FIPS 140-2 certification

## :344 15. Maintenance

### :345 **Start of informative comment**

:346 The maintenance feature is a vendor-specific feature, and its implementation is vendor-  
:347 specific. The implementation must, however, meet the minimum security requirements so  
:348 that implementations of the maintenance feature do not result in security weaknesses.

:349 There is no requirement that the maintenance feature is available, but if it is implemented,  
:350 then the requirements must be met.

:351 The maintenance feature described in the specification is an example only, and not the only  
:352 mechanism that a manufacturer could implement that meets these requirements.

:353 Maintenance is different from backup/migration, because maintenance provides for the  
:354 migration of both migratory and non-migratory data. Maintenance is an optional TPM  
:355 function, but if a TPM enables maintenance, the maintenance capabilities in this  
:356 specification are mandatory – no other migration capabilities shall be used. Maintenance  
:357 necessarily involves the manufacturer of a Subsystem.

:358 When maintaining computer systems, it is sometimes the case that a manufacturer or its  
:359 representative needs to replace a Subsystem containing a TPM. Some manufacturers  
:360 consider it a requirement that there be a means of doing this replacement without the loss  
:361 of the non-migrational keys held by the original TPM.

:362 The owner and users of TCG platforms need assurance that the data within protected  
:363 storage is adequately protected against interception by third parties or the manufacturer.

:364 This process **MUST** only be performed between two platforms of the same manufacturer and  
:365 model. If the maintenance feature is supported, this section defines the required functions  
:366 defined at a high level. The final function definitions and entire maintenance process is left  
:367 to the manufacturer to define within the constraints of these high level functions.

:368 Any maintenance process must have certain properties. Specifically, any migration to a  
:369 replacement Subsystem must require collaboration between the Owner of the existing  
:370 Subsystem and the manufacturer of the existing Subsystem. Further, the procedure must  
:371 have adequate safeguards to prevent a non-migrational key being transferred to multiple  
:372 Subsystems.

:373 The maintenance capabilities `TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive` and  
:374 `TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive` enable the transfer of all Protected Storage data from a  
:375 Subsystem containing a first TPM ( $TPM_1$ ) to a Subsystem containing a second TPM ( $TPM_2$ ):

:376 A manufacturer places a public key in non-volatile storage into its TPMs at manufacture  
:377 time.

:378 The Owner of  $TPM_1$  uses `TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive` to create a maintenance archive  
:379 that enables the migration of all data held in Protected Storage by  $TPM_1$ . The Owner of  $TPM_1$   
:380 must provide his or her authorization to the Subsystem. The TPM then creates the  
:381 `TPM_MIGRATE_ASYMKEY` structure and follows the process defined.

:382 The XOR process prevents the manufacturer from ever obtaining plaintext  $TPM_1$  data.

:383 The additional random data provides a means to assure that a maintenance process cannot  
:384 subvert archive data and hide such subversion.

:385 The random mask can be generated by two methods, either using the TPM RNG or MGF1 on  
:386 the TPM Owners AuthData.

:387 The manufacturer takes the maintenance blob, decrypts it with its private key, and satisfies  
:388 itself that the data bundle represents data from that Subsystem manufactured by that  
:389 manufacturer. Then the manufacturer checks the endorsement certificate of TPM<sub>2</sub> and  
:390 verifies that it represents a platform to which data from TPM<sub>1</sub> may be moved.

:391 The manufacturer dispatches two messages.

:392 The first message is made available to CAs, and is a revocation of the TPM<sub>1</sub> endorsement  
:393 certificate.

:394 The second message is sent to the Owner of TPM<sub>2</sub>, which will communicate the SRK,  
:395 tpmProof and the manufacturer's permission to install the maintenance blob only on TPM<sub>2</sub>

:396 The Owner uses TPM\_LoadMaintenanceArchive to install the archive copy into TPM<sub>2</sub>, and  
:397 overwrite the existing TPM<sub>2</sub>-SRK and TPM<sub>2</sub>-tpmProof in TPM<sub>2</sub>. TPM<sub>2</sub> overwrites TPM<sub>2</sub>-SRK  
:398 with TPM<sub>1</sub>-SRK, and overwrites TPM<sub>2</sub>-tpmProof with TPM<sub>1</sub>-tpmProof.

:399 Note that the command TPM\_KillMaintenanceFeature prevents the operation of  
:400 TPM\_CreateMaintenanceArchive and TPM\_LoadMaintenanceArchive. This enables an Owner  
:401 to block maintenance (and hence the migration of non-migratory data) either to or from a  
:402 TPM.

:403 It is required that a manufacturer takes steps that prevent further access of migrated data  
:404 by TPM<sub>1</sub>. This may be achieved by deleting the existing Owner from TPM<sub>1</sub>, for example.

:405 For the manufacturer to validate that the maintenance blob is coming from a valid TPM, the  
:406 manufacturer can require that a TPM identity sign the maintenance blob. The identity  
:407 would be from a CA under the control of the manufacturer and hence the manufacturer  
:408 would be satisfied that the blob is from a valid TPM.

**End of informative comment**

- :410 1. The maintenance feature MUST ensure that the information can be on only one TPM at  
:411 a time. Maintenance MUST ensure that at no time the process will expose a shielded  
:412 location. Maintenance MUST require the active participation of the Owner.
- :413 2. Any migration of non-migratory data protected by a Subsystem SHALL require the  
:414 cooperation of both the Owner of that non-migratory data and the manufacturer of that  
:415 Subsystem. That manufacturer SHALL NOT cooperate in a maintenance process unless  
:416 the manufacturer is satisfied that non-migratory data will exist in exactly one  
:417 Subsystem. A TPM SHALL NOT provide capabilities that support migration of non-  
:418 migratory data unless those capabilities are described in the TCG specification.
- :419 3. The maintenance feature MUST move the following
- :420 4. TPM\_KEY for SRK. The maintenance process will reset the SRK AuthData to match the  
:421 TPM Owners AuthData
- :422 5. TPM\_PERMANENT\_DATA -> tpmProof
- :423 6. TPM Owner's authorization

## :424 15.1 Field Upgrade

**Start of informative comment**

:426 A TPM, once in the field, may need to update the protected capabilities. This command,  
:427 which is optional, provides the mechanism to perform the update.

:428 **End of informative comment**

:429 The TPM SHOULD have provisions for upgrading the subsystem after shipment from the  
:430 manufacturer. If provided the mechanism MUST implement the following guidelines:

- :431 1. The upgrade mechanisms in the TPM MUST not require the TPM to hold a global secret.  
:432 The definition of global secret is a secret value shared by more than one TPM.
- :433 2. The TPM is not allowed to pre-store or use unique identifiers in the TPM for the purpose  
:434 of field upgrade. The TPM MUST NOT use the endorsement key for identification or  
:435 encryption in the upgrade process. The upgrade process MAY use a TPM Identity (AIK) to  
:436 deliver upgrade information to specific TPM devices.
- :437 3. The upgrade process can only change protected-capabilities.
- :438 4. The upgrade process can only access data in shielded-locations where this data is  
:439 necessary to validate the TPM Owner, validate the TPME and manipulate the blob
- :440 5. The TPM MUST conform to the TCG specification, protection profiles and security targets  
:441 after the upgrade. The upgrade MAY NOT decrease the security values from the original  
:442 security target.
- :443 6. The security target used to evaluate this TPM MUST include this command in the TOE.

## :444 **16. Proof of Locality**

### :445 **Start of informative comment**

:446 When a platform is designed with a trusted process, the trusted process may wish to  
:447 communicate with the TPM and indicate that the command is coming from the trusted  
:448 process. The definition of a trusted process is a platform specific issue.

:449 The commands that the trusted process sends to the TPM are the normal TPM commands  
:450 with a modifier that indicates that the trusted process initiated the command. The TPM  
:451 accepts the command as coming from the trusted process merely due to the fact that the  
:452 modifier is set. The TPM itself is not responsible how the signal is asserted; only that it  
:453 honors the assertions The TPM cannot verify the validity of the modifier.

:454 The definition of the modifier is a platform specific issue. Depending on the platform the  
:455 modifier could be a special bus cycle or additional input pins on the TPM. The assumption  
:456 is that to spoof the modifier to the TPM requires more than just a simple hardware attack  
:457 but would require expertise and possibly special hardware. One example would be special  
:458 cycles on the LPC bus that inform the TPM it is under the control of a process on the PC  
:459 platform.

:460 To allow for multiple mechanisms and for finer grained reporting the TPM will include 4  
:461 locality modifiers. These four modifiers allow the platform specific specification to properly  
:462 indicate exactly what is occurring and for TPM's to properly respond to locality.

### :463 **End of informative comment**

- :464 1. The TPM modifies the receipt of a command and indicates that the trusted process sent  
:465 the command when the TPM determines that the modifier is on. The modifier **MUST** only  
:466 affect the individual command just received and **MUST NOT** affect any other commands.  
:467 However the TPM\_ExecuteTransport **MUST** propagate the modifier to the wrapped  
:468 command.
- :469 2. A TPM platform specific specification **MAY** indicate the presence of a maximum of 4 local  
:470 modifiers. The modifier indication uses the TPM\_MODIFIER\_INDICATOR structure.
- :471 3. The modifiers may occur singularly or in combination.
- :472 4. The definition of the trusted source is in the platform specific specification.
- :473 5. For ease in reading this specification the indication that the TPM has received any  
:474 modifier will be LOCAL\_MOD = TRUE.

## :475 **17. Monotonic Counter**

### :476 **Start of informative comment**

:477 The monotonic counter provides an ever-increasing incremental value. The TPM must  
:478 support at least 4 concurrent counters. Implementations inside the TPM may create 4  
:479 unique counters or there may be one counter with pointers to keep track of the pointers  
:480 current value. A naming convention to allow for unambiguous reference to the various  
:481 components the following terms are in use:

:482 Internal Base – This is the main counter. It is in use internally by the TPM and is not  
:483 directly accessible by any outside process.

:484 External Counter – A counter in use by external processes. This could be related to the  
:485 main counter via pointers and difference values or it could be a totally unique value. The  
:486 value of an external counter is not affected by any use, increment or deletion of any other  
:487 external counter.

:488 Max Value – The max count value of all counters (internal and external). So if there were 3  
:489 external counters having values of 10, 15 and 201 and the internal base having a value of  
:490 201 then Max Value is 201. In the same example if the internal base was 502 then Max  
:491 Value would be 502.

:492 There are two methods of obtaining an external count, signed or unsigned. The external  
:493 counter must allow for 7 years of increments every 5 seconds without causing a hardware  
:494 failure. The output of the counter is a 32-bit value.

:495 The TPM may create a throttling mechanism that limits the ability to increment an external  
:496 counter within a certain time range. The TPM must support an increment rate of once every  
:497 5 seconds.

:498 To create an external counter requires TPM Owner authorization. To increment an external  
:499 counter the command must pass authorization to use the counter.

:500 External counters can be tagged with a short text string to facilitate counter administration.

:501 Manufacturers are free to implement the monotonic counter using any mechanism.

:502 To illustrate the counters and base the following example is in use. This mechanism uses  
:503 two saving values (diff and start), however this is only an example and not meant to indicate  
:504 any specific implementation.



:505

:506 The internal base (IB) always moves forward and can never be reset. IB drives all external  
:507 counters on the machine..

:508 The purpose of the following example is to show the two external counters always moving  
:509 forward independent of the other and how the IB moves forward also.

:510 Starting condition is that IB is at 22 and no other external counters are active.

:511 Start external counter A

:512     Increment IB (set new Max Value) IB = 23

:513     Assign start value of A to 23 (or Max Value)

:514     Assign difference of A to 23 (we always start at current value of IB)

:515     Assign a handle for A

:516 Increment A 5 times

:517     IB is now 28

:518 Request current A value

:519     Return  $28 = 28 \text{ (IB)} + 23 \text{ (difference)} - 23 \text{ (start value)}$

:520     Counter A has gone from the start of 23 to 28 incremented 5 times.

:521 TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR)

:522 Start Counter B

:523     Save A difference  $28 = 23 \text{ (old difference)} + 28 \text{ (IB)} - 23 \text{ (start value)}$

:524     Increment IB (set new Max Value) IB = 29

:525     Set start value of B to 29 (or Max Value)

:526     Assign difference of B to 29

:527     Assign handle for B

:528 Increment B 8 times

:529       IB is now 37  
:530 Request B value  
:531       Return  $37 = 37 \text{ (IB)} + 29 \text{ (difference)} - 29 \text{ (start value)}$   
:532 TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR)  
:533 Increment A  
:534       Store B difference (37)  
:535       Load A start value of 37  
:536       Increment IB to 38  
:537 Return A value  
:538       Return  $29 = 38 \text{ (IB)} + 28 \text{ (difference)} - 37 \text{ (start value)}$   
:539  
:540 Notice that A has gone from 28 to 29 which is correct, while B is at 37. Depending on the  
:541 order of increments A may pass B or it may always be less than B.  
:542 **End of informative comment**  
:543 1. The counter MUST be designed to not wear out in the first 7 years of operation. The  
:544 counter MUST be able to increment at least once every 5 seconds. The TPM, in response  
:545 to operations that would violate these counter requirements, MAY throttle the counter  
:546 usage (cause a delay in the use of the counter) or return the error  
:547 TPM\_E\_COUNTERUSAGE.  
:548 2. The TPM MUST support at least 4 concurrent counters.  
:549 3. The establishment of a new counter MUST prevent the reuse of any previous counter  
:550 value. I.E. if the TPM has 3 counters and the max value of a current counter is at 36  
:551 then the establishment of a new counter would start at 37.  
:552 4. After a successful TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR) the first successful TPM\_IncrementCounter  
:553 sets the counter handle. Any attempt to issue TPM\_IncrementCounter with a different  
:554 handle MUST fail.  
:555 5. TPM\_CreateCounter does NOT set the counter handle.

## :556 **18. Transport Protection**

### :557 **Start of informative comment**

:558 The creation of sessions allows for the grouping of a set of commands into a session. The  
:559 session provides a log of all commands and can provide confidentiality of the commands  
:560 using the session.

:561 Session establishment creates a shared secret and then uses the shared secret to authorize  
:562 and protect commands sent to the TPM using the session.

:563 After establishing the session, the caller uses the session to wrap a command to execute.  
:564 The user of the transport session can wrap any command except for commands that would  
:565 create nested transport sessions.

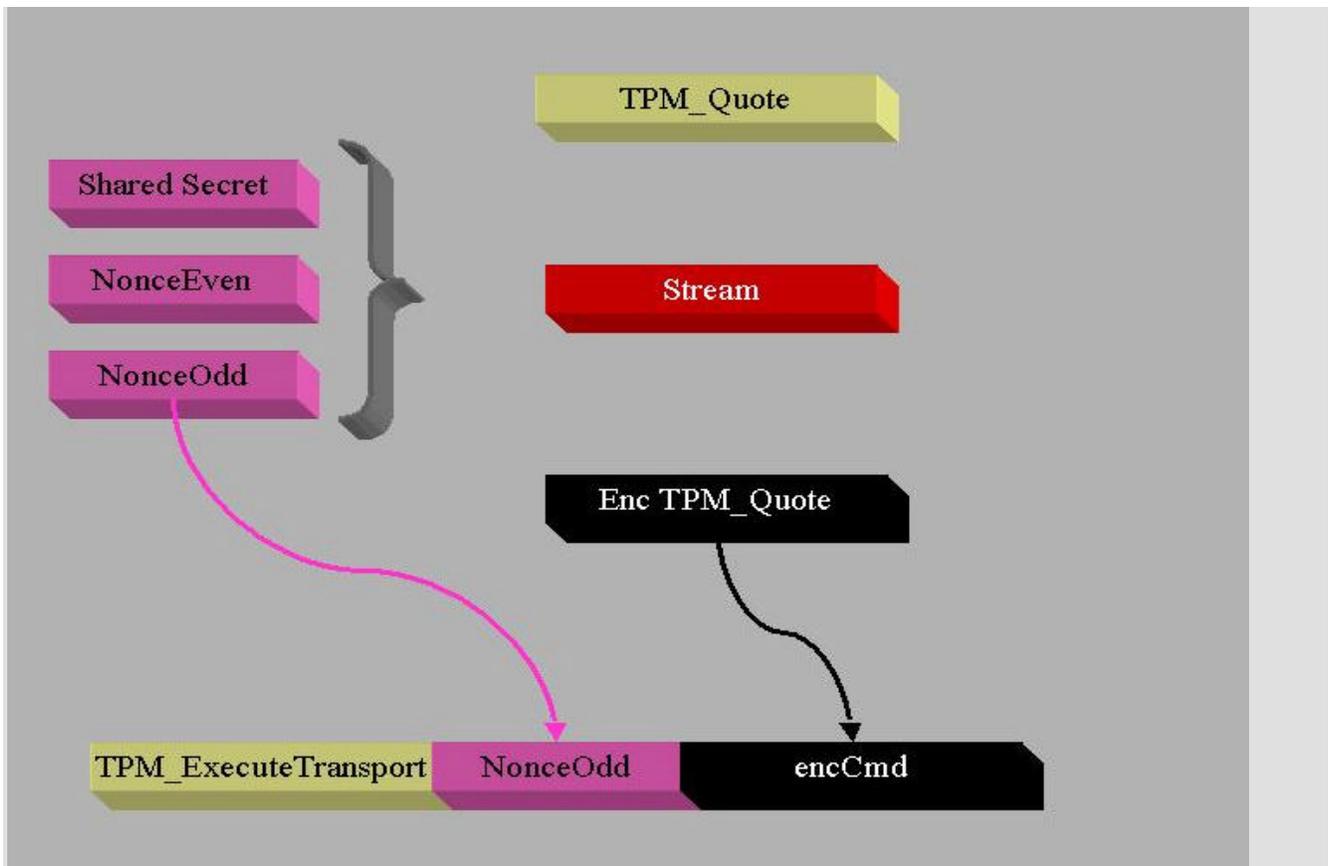
:566 The log of executed commands uses a structure that includes the parameters and current  
:567 tick count. The session log provides a record of each command using the session.

:568 The transport session uses the same rolling nonce protocol that authorization sessions use.  
:569 This protocol defines two nonces for each command sent to the TPM; nonceOdd provided by  
:570 the caller and nonceEven generated by the TPM.

:571 For confidentiality, the caller can use the MGF1 function to create an XOR string the same  
:572 size as the command to execute. The inputs to the MGF1 function are the shared secret,  
:573 nonceOdd and nonceEven. A symmetric key encryption algorithm can also be specified.

:574 There is no explicit close session as the caller can use the continueSession flag set to false  
:575 to end a session. The caller can also call the sign session log, which also ends the session. If  
:576 the caller loses track of which sessions are active the caller should use the flush  
:577 commands to regain control of the TPM resources.

:578 For an attacker to successfully break the encryption the attacker must be able to determine  
:579 from a few bits what an entire SHA-1 output was. This is equivalent to breaking SHA-1. The  
:580 reason that the attacker will know some bits is that the commands are in a known format.  
:581 This then allows the attacker to determine what the XOR bits were. Knowledge of 159 bits of  
:582 the XOR stream does not provide any greater than 50% probability of knowing the 160<sup>th</sup> bit.



:583

:584 This picture shows the protection of a TPM\_Quote command. Previously executed was  
 :585 session establishment. The nonces in use for the TPM\_Quote have no relationship with the  
 :586 nonces that are in use for the TPM\_ExecuteTransport command.

:587 **End of informative comment**

- :588 1. The TPM MUST support a minimum of one transport session.
- :589 2. The TPM MUST NOT support the nesting of transport sessions. The definition of nesting  
 :590 is attempting to execute a wrapped command that is a transport session command. So  
 :591 for example when executing TPM\_ExecuteTransport the wrapped command MUST not be  
 :592 TPM\_ExecuteTransport.
- :593 3. The TPM MUST ensure that if transport logging is active that the inclusion of the tick  
 :594 count in the session log does not provide information that would make a timing attack  
 :595 on the operations using the session more successful.
- :596 4. The transport session MAY be exclusive. Any command executed outside of the exclusive  
 :597 transport session MUST cause the invalidation of the exclusive transport session.
- :598 a. The TPM\_ExecuteTransport command specifying the exclusive transport session is  
 :599 the only command that does not terminate the exclusive session.
- :600 5. It MAY be ineffective to wrap TPM\_SaveState in a transport session. Since the TPM MAY  
 :601 include transport sessions in the saved state, the saved state MAY be invalidated by the  
 :602 wrapping TPM\_ExecuteTransport.

:603 **18.1 Transport encryption and authorization**

:604 **Start of informative comment**

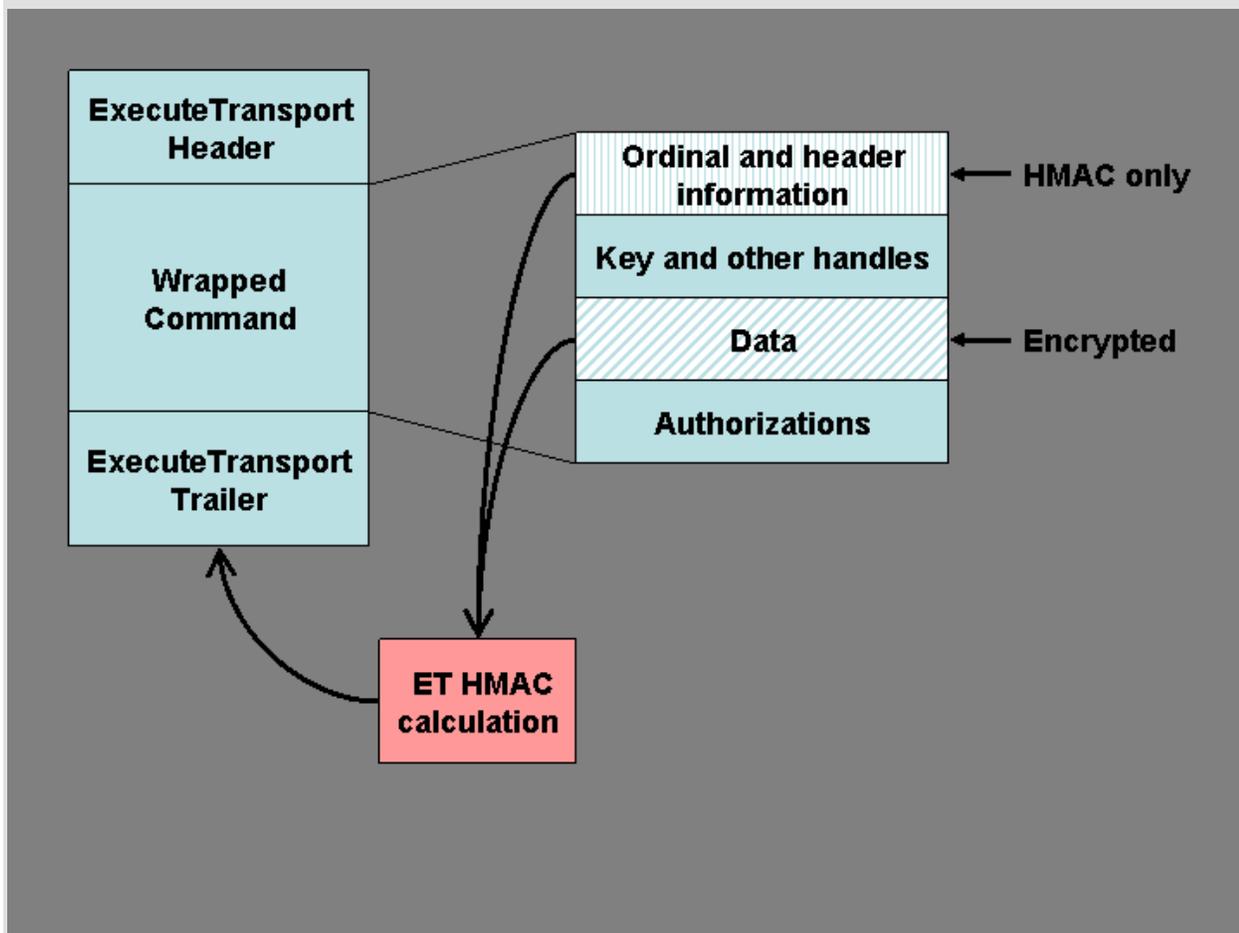
:605 The confidentiality of the transport protection is provided by a encrypting the wrapped  
:606 command. Encryption of various items in the wrapped command makes resource  
:607 management of a TPM impossible. For this reason, encryption of the entire command is not  
:608 possible. In addition to the encryption issue, there are difficulties with creating the HMAC  
:609 for the TPM\_ExecuteTransport authorization.

:610 The solution to these problems is to provide limited encryption and HMAC information.

:611 The HMAC will only include two areas from the wrapped command, the command header  
:612 information up to the handles, and the data after the handles. The format of all TPM  
:613 commands is such that all handles are in the data stream prior to the payload or data. After  
:614 the data comes the authorization information. To enable resource management, the HMAC  
:615 for TPM\_ExecuteTransport only includes the ordinal, header information and the data. The  
:616 HMAC does not include handles and the authorization handles and nonces.

:617 The exception is TPM\_OwnerReadInternalPub, which uses fixed value key handles that are  
:618 included in the encryption and HMAC calculation.

:619



:620

:621 A more exact representation of the execute transport command would be the following

```
'622 *****
'623 * TAGet | LENet | ORDet | wrappedCmd | AUTHet *
'624 *****
```

'625

'626

wrappedCmd looks like

```
'627 *****
'628 * TAGw | LENw | ORDw | HANDLESw | DATAw | AUTH1w (o) | AUTH2w (o) *
'629 *****
```

'630

A more exact representation of the execute transport response would be the following

```
'631 *****
'632 * TAGet | LENet | RCet | wrappedRsp | AUTHet *
'633 *****
```

'634

'635

wrappedRsp looks like

```
'636 *****
'637 * TAGw | LENw | RCw | HANDLESw | DATAw | AUTH1w (o) | AUTH2w (o) *
'638 *****
```

'639

'640

The calculation for AUTHet takes as the data component of the HMAC calculation the concatenation of ORDw and DATAw. A normal HMAC calculation would have taken the entire wrappedCmd value but for the executeTransport calculation only the above two values are active. This does require the executeTransport command to parse the wrappedCmd to find the appropriate values.

'645

The data for the command HMAC calculation is the following:

'646

H1 = SHA-1 (ORDw || DATAw)

'647

inParamDigest = SHA-1 (ORDet || wrappedCmdSize || H1)

'648

AUTHet = HMAC (inParamDigest || lastNonceEven(et) || nonceOdd(et) || continue(et))

'649

The data for the response HMAC calculation is the following:

'650

H2 = SHA-1 (RCw || ORDw || DATAw)

'651

outParamDigest = SHA-1 (RCet || ORDet || currentTicks || locality || wrappedRspSize || H1)

'652

'653

AUTHet = HMAC (outParamDigest || nonceEven(et) || nonceOdd(et) || continue(et))

'654

DATAw is the unencrypted data. wrappedCmdSize and wrappedRspSize are the actual size of the DATAw area and not the size of H1 or H2.

'655

'656

**End of informative comment**

'657

The TPM MUST release a transport session and all information related to the session when:

'658

1. TPM\_ReleaseTransportSigned is executed

'659

2. TPM\_ExecuteTransport is executed with continueTransSession set to FALSE

'660

3. Any failure of the integrity check during execution of TPM\_ExecuteTransport

'661

4. If the session has TPM\_TRANSPORT\_LOG set and the TPM tick session is interrupted for any reason. This is due to the return of tick values without the nonces associated with the session.

'662

'663

'664 5. The TPM executes some command that deactivates the TPM or removes the TPM Owner  
'665 or EK.

## '666 **18.1.1 MGF1 parameters**

### '667 **Start of informative comment**

'668 MGF1 provides the confidentiality for the transport session. MGF1 is a function from PKCS  
'669 1 version 2.0. This function provides a mechanism to distribute entropy over a large  
'670 sequence. The sequence provides a value to XOR over the message. This in effect creates a  
'671 stream cipher but not one that is available for bulk encryption.

'672 Transport confidentiality uses MGF1 as a stream cipher and obtains the entropy for each  
'673 message from the following three parameters; nonceOdd, nonceEven and session authData.

'674 It is imperative that the stream cipher not use the same XOR sequence at any time. The  
'675 following illustrates how the sequence changes for each message (both input and output).

'676 M1Input – N2, N1, sessionSecret)

'677 M1Output – N4, N1, sessionSecret)

'678 M2Input – N4, N3, sessionSecret)

'679 M2Output – N6, N3, sessionSecret)

'680 There is an issue with this sequence. If the caller does not change N1 to N3 between  
'681 M1Output and M2Input then the same sequence will be generated. The TPM does not  
'682 enforce the requirement to change this value so it is possible to leak information.

'683 The fix for this is to add one more parameter, the direction. So the sequence is now this:

'684 M1Input – N2, N1, “in”, sessionSecret)

'685 M1Output – N4, N1, “out”, sessionSecret)

'686 M2Input – N4, N3, “in”, sessionSecret)

'687 M2Output – N6, N3, “out”, sessionSecret)

'688 Where “in” indicates the in direction and “out” indicates the out direction.

'689 Notice the calculation for M1Output uses “out” and M2Input uses “in”, so if the caller  
'690 makes a mistake and does not change nonceOdd, the sequence will still be different.

'691 nonceEven is under control of the TPM and is always changing, so there is no need to worry  
'692 about nonceEven not changing.

### '693 **End of informative comment**

## '694 **18.1.2 HMAC calculation**

### '695 **Start of informative comment**

'696 The HMAC calculation for transports presents some issues with what should and should  
'697 not be in the calculation. The idea is to create a calculation for the wrapped command and  
'698 add that to the wrapper.

'699 So the data area for a wrapped command is not entirely HMAC'd like a normal command  
'700 would be.

:701 The process is to calculate the inParamDigest of the unencrypted wrapped command  
:702 according to the normal rules of command HMAC calculations. Then use that value as the  
:703 3S parameter in the calculation. 2S is the actual wrapped command size, and not the size  
:704 of inParamDigest.

:705 Example using a wrapped TPM\_LoadKey command

:706 Calculate the SHA-1 value for the TPM\_LoadKey command (ordinal and data) as per the  
:707 normal HMAC rules. Take the digest and use that value as 3S for the  
:708 TPM\_ExecuteTransport HMAC calculation.

:709 **End of informative comment**

### :710 **18.1.3 Transport log creation**

:711 **Start of informative comment**

:712 The log of information that a transport session creates needs a mechanism to tie any keys  
:713 in use during the session to the session. As the HMAC and encryption for the command  
:714 specifically exclude handles, there is no direct way to create the binding.

:715 When creating the input log, if a handle points to a key, the hash of the public key is added  
:716 to the log. The session owner knows the value of any keys in use and hence can still create  
:717 a log that shows the values used by the log and can validate the session.

:718 When creating the transport input log, if there is one input key, the TPM will create a hash  
:719 of the public key. If there are two input keys, the TPM will create a hash of each public key,  
:720 concatenate the hashes, and create a hash of the result. The result, along with the  
:721 parameter digest, is used to extend that transport log.

:722 **End of informative comment**

### :723 **18.1.4 Additional Encryption Mechanisms**

:724 **Start of informative comment**

:725 The TPM can optionally implement alternate algorithms for the encryption of commands  
:726 sent to the TPM\_ExecuteTransport command. The designation of the algorithm uses the  
:727 TPM\_ALGORITHM\_ID element of the TPM\_TRANSPORT\_PUBLIC parameter of  
:728 TPM\_EstablishTransport command.

:729 The anticipation is that AES and 3DES will be available algorithms supported by various  
:730 TPM's. Symmetric algorithms have options available to them like key size, block size and  
:731 operating mode. When using an algorithm other than MGF1 the algorithm must specify  
:732 these options.

:733 **End of informative comment**

:734 1. The TPM MAY support other symmetric algorithms for the confidentiality requirement in  
:735 TPM\_EstablishTransport

## :736 **18.2 Transport Error Handling**

:737 **Start of informative comment**

:738 With the transport hiding the actual execution of commands and the transport capable of  
:739 generating errors, rules must be established to allow for the errors and the results of  
:740 commands to be properly passed to TPM callers.

:741 **End of informative comment**

- :742 1. There are 3 error cases:
- :743 2. C1 is the case where an error occurs during the processing of the transport package at  
:744 the TPM. In this case, the wrapped command has not been sent to the command  
:745 decoder. Errors occurring during C1 are sent back to the caller as a response to the  
:746 TPM\_ExecuteTransport command. The error response does not have confidentiality.
- :747 3. C2 is the case where an error occurs during the processing of the wrapped command.  
:748 This results in an error response from the command. The session returns the error  
:749 response according to the attributes of the session.
- :750 4. C3 is the case where an error occurs after the wrapped command has completed  
:751 processing and the TPM is preparing the response to the TPM\_ExecuteTransport  
:752 command. In this case, where the TPM does have an internal error, the TPM has no  
:753 choice but to return the error as in C1. This however hides the results of the wrapped  
:754 command. If the wrapped command completed successfully then there are session  
:755 nonces that are being returned to the caller that are lost. The loss of these nonces  
:756 causes the caller to be unsure of the state of the TPM and requires the reestablishment  
:757 of sessions and keys.

:758 **18.3 Exclusive Transport Sessions**

:759 **Start of informative comment**

:760 The caller may establish an exclusive session with the TPM. When an exclusive session is  
:761 running, execution of any command other than TPM\_ExecuteTransport or  
:762 TPM\_ReleaseTransportSigned targeting the exclusive session causes the abnormal  
:763 invalidation of the exclusive transport session. Invalidation means that the handle is no  
:764 longer valid and all subsequent attempts to use the handle return an error.

:765 The design for the exclusive session provides an assurance that no other command  
:766 executed on the TPM. It is not a lock to prevent other operations from occurring. Therefore,  
:767 the caller is responsible for ensuring no interruption of the sequence of commands using  
:768 the TPM.

:769 **One exclusive session**

:770 The TPM only supports one exclusive session at a time. There is no nesting or other  
:771 commands possible. The TPM maintains an internal flag that indicates the existence of an  
:772 exclusive session.

:773 **TSS responsibilities**

:774 It is the responsibility of the TSS (or other controlling software) to ensure that only  
:775 commands using the session reach the TPM. As the purpose of the session is to show that  
:776 nothing else occurred on the TPM during the session, the TSS should control access to the  
:777 TPM and prevent any other uses of the TPM. The TSS design must take into account the  
:778 possibility of exclusive session handle invalidation.

:779 **Sleep states**

:780 Exclusive sessions as defined here do not work across TPM\_SaveState and  
 :781 TPM\_Startup(ST\_STATE) invocations. To have this sequence work properly there would  
 :782 need to be exceptions to allowing only TPM\_ExecuteTransport and  
 :783 TPM\_ReleaseTransportSigned in an exclusive session. The requirement for these exceptions  
 :784 would come from the attempt of the TSS to understand the current state of the TPM.  
 :785 Commands like TPM\_GetCapability and others would have to execute to inform the TSS as  
 :786 to the internal state of the TPM. For this reason, there are no exceptions to the rule and the  
 :787 exclusive session does not remain active across a TPM\_SaveState command.

:788 **End of informative comment**

- :789 1. The TPM MUST support only one exclusive transport session
- :790 2. The TPM MUST invalidate the exclusive transport session upon the receipt of any  
 :791 command other than TPM\_ExecuteTransport or TPM\_ReleaseTransportSigned targeting  
 :792 the exclusive session.
- :793 a. Invalidation includes the release of any resources assigned to the session

:794 **18.4 Transport Audit Handling**

:795 **Start of informative comment**

:796 Auditing of TPM\_ExecuteTransport occurs as any other command that may require  
 :797 auditing. There are two entries in the log, one for input one for output. The execution of the  
 :798 wrapped command can create an anomaly in the log.

:799 Assume that both TPM\_ExecuteTransport and the wrapped commands require auditing, the  
 :800 audit flow would look like the following:

- :801 TPM\_ExecuteTransport input parameters
- :802 wrapped command input parameters
- :803 wrapped command output parameters
- :804 TPM\_ExecuteTransport output parameters

:805 **End of informative comment**

- :806 1. Audit failures are reported using the AUTHFAIL error commands and reflect the success  
 :807 or failure of the wrapped command.

:808 **18.4.1 Auditing of wrapped commands**

:809 **Start of informative comment**

:810 Auditing provides information to allow an auditor to recreate the operations performed.  
 :811 Confidentiality on the transport channel is to hide what operations occur. These two  
 :812 features are in conflict. According to the TPM design philosophy, the TPM Owner takes  
 :813 precedence.

:814 For a command sent on a transport session, with the session using confidentiality and the  
 :815 command requiring auditing, the TPM will execute the command however the input and  
 :816 output parameters for the command are set to NULL.

:817 **End of informative comment**

- '818 1. When the wrapped command requires auditing and the transport session specifies  
'819 encryption, the TPM MUST perform the audit. However, when computing the audit  
'820 digest:
- '821 a. For input, only the ordinal is audited.
  - '822 b. For output, only the ordinal and return code are audited.

## :823 19. Audit Commands

### :824 **Start of informative comment**

:825 To allow the TPM Owner the ability to determine that certain operations on the TPM have  
:826 been executed, auditing of commands is possible. The audit value is a digest held internally  
:827 to the TPM and externally as a log of all audited commands. With the log held externally to  
:828 the TPM, the internal digest must allow the log auditor to determine the presence of attacks  
:829 against the log. The evidence of tampering may not provide evidence of the type of attack  
:830 mounted against the log.

:831 The TPM cannot enforce any protections on the external log. It is the responsibility of the  
:832 external log owner to properly maintain and protect the log.

:833 The TPM provides mechanisms for the external log maintainer to resynchronize the internal  
:834 digest and external logs.

:835 The Owner has the ability to set which functions generate an audit event and to change  
:836 which functions generate the event at any time.

:837 The status of the audit generation is not sensitive information and so the command to  
:838 determine the status of the audit generation is not an owner authorized command.

:839 It is important to note the difference between auditing and the logging of transport sessions.  
:840 The audit log provides information on the execution of specific commands. There will be a  
:841 very limited number of audited commands, most likely those commands that provide  
:842 identities and control of the TPM. Commands such as TPM\_Unseal would not be audited.  
:843 They would use the logging functions of a transport session.

:844 The auditing of an ordinal happens in a two-step process. The first step involves auditing  
:845 the receipt of the command and the input parameters; the second step involves auditing the  
:846 response to the command and the output parameters. This two-step process is in place to  
:847 lower the amount of memory necessary to keep track of the audit while executing the  
:848 command. This two-step process makes no memory requirements on a TPM to save any  
:849 audit information while a command is executing.

:850 There is a requirement to enable verification of the external audit log both during a power  
:851 session and across power sessions and to enable detection of partial or inconsistent audit  
:852 logs throughout the lifetime of a TPM.

:853 A TPM will hold an internal record consisting of a non-volatile counter (that increments  
:854 once per session, when the first audit event of that session occurs) and a digest (that holds  
:855 the digest of the current session). Most probably, the audit digest will be volatile. Note,  
:856 however, that nothing in this specification prevents the use of a non-volatile audit digest.  
:857 This arrangement of counter and digest is advantageous because it is easier to build a high  
:858 endurance non-volatile counter than a high endurance non-volatile digest. This  
:859 arrangement is insufficient, however, because the truncation of an audit log of any session  
:860 is possible without trace. It is therefore necessary to perform an explicit close on the audit  
:861 session. If there is no record of a close-audit event in an audit session, anything could have  
:862 happened after the last audit event in the audit log. The essence of a typical TPM audit  
:863 recording mechanism is therefore:

:864 The TPM contains a volatile digest used like a PCR, where the “integrity metrics” are digests  
:865 of command parameters in the current audit session.

:866 An audit session opens when the volatile “PCR” digest is “extended” from its NULL state.  
:867 This occurs whenever an audited command is executed AND no audit session currently  
:868 exists, and in no other circumstances. When an audit session opens, a non-volatile counter  
:869 is automatically incremented.

:870 An audit session closes when a TPM receives TPM\_GetAuditDigestSigned with a closeAudit  
:871 parameter asserted. An audit session must be considered closed if the value in the volatile  
:872 digest is invalid (for whatever reason).

:873 TPM\_GetCapability should report the effect of TPM\_Startup on the volatile digest. (TPMs  
:874 may initialize the volatile digest on the first audit command after TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR),  
:875 or on the first audit command after any version of TPM\_Startup, or may be independent of  
:876 TPM\_Startup.)

:877 When the TPM signs its audit digest, it signs the concatenation of the non-volatile counter  
:878 and the volatile digest, and exports the value of the non-volatile counter, plus the value of  
:879 the volatile digest, plus the value of the signature.

:880 If the audit digest is initialized by TPM\_Startup(ST\_STATE), then it may be useless to audit  
:881 the TPM\_SaveState ordinal. Any command after TPM\_SaveState MAY invalidate the saved  
:882 state. If authorization sessions are part of the saved state, TPM\_GetAuditDigestSigned will  
:883 most likely invalidate the state as it changes the preserved authorization session nonce. It  
:884 may therefore be impossible to get the audit results.

:885 The system designer needs to ensure that the selected TPM can handle the specific  
:886 environment and avoid burnout of the audit monotonic counter.

:887 **End of informative comment**

- :888 1. Audit functionality is optional
- :889 a. If the platform specific specification requires auditing, the specification SHALL  
:890 indicate how the TPM implements audit
- :891 2. The TPM MUST maintain an audit monotonic count that is only available for audit  
:892 purposes.
- :893 a. The increment of this audit counter is under the sole control of the TPM and is not  
:894 usable for other count purposes.
- :895 b. This monotonic count MUST BE incremented by one whenever the audit digest is  
:896 “extended” from a NULL state.
- :897 3. The TPM MUST maintain an audit digest.
- :898 a. This digest MUST be set to NULL upon the execution of TPM\_GetAuditDigestSigned  
:899 with a TRUE value of closeAudit provided that the signing key is an identity key.
- :900 b. This digest MAY be set to NULL on TPM\_Startup[ST\_CLEAR] or  
:901 TPM\_Startup[ST\_STATE].
- :902 c. When an audited command is executed, this register MUST be extended with the  
:903 digest of that command.
- :904 4. Each command ordinal has an indicator in non-volatile TPM memory that indicates if  
:905 execution of the command will generate an audit event. The setting of the ordinal  
:906 indicator MUST be under control of the TPM Owner.

:907 5. Updating of auditDigest MAY cease when TPM\_STCLEAR\_FLAGS -> deactivated is TRUE.  
:908 This is because a deactivated TPM performs no useful service until the  
:909 TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR), at which point TPM\_STCLEAR\_FLAGS -> deactivated is  
:910 reinitialized.

## :911 **19.1 Audit Monotonic Counter**

### :912 **Start of informative comment**

:913 The audit monotonic counter (AMC) performs the task of sequencing audit logs across audit  
:914 sessions. The AMC must have no other uses other than the audit log.

:915 The TPM and platform should be matched such that the expected AMC endurance matches  
:916 the expected platform audit sessions and sleep cycles.

:917 Given the size of the AMC it is not anticipated that the AMC would roll over. If the AMC  
:918 were to roll over, and the storage of the AMC still allowed updates, the AMC could cycle and  
:919 start at 0 again.

### :920 **End of informative comment**

- :921 1. The AMC is a TPM\_COUNTER\_VALUE.
- :922 2. The AMC MUST last for 7 years or at least 1,000,000 audit sessions, whichever occurs  
:923 first. After this amount of usage, there is no guarantee that the TPM will continue to  
:924 properly increment the monotonic counter.

## :925 **20. Design Section on Time Stamping**

### :926 **Start of informative comment**

:927 The TPM provides a service to apply a time stamp to various blobs. The time stamp provided  
:928 by the TPM is not an actual universal time clock (UTC) value but is the number of timer  
:929 ticks the TPM has counted. It is the responsibility of the caller to associate the ticks to an  
:930 actual UTC time.

:931 The TPM counts ticks from the start of a timing session. Timing sessions are platform  
:932 dependent events that may or may not coincide with TPM\_Init and TPM\_Startup sessions.  
:933 The reason for this difference is the availability of power to the TPM. In a PC desktop, for  
:934 instance power could be continually available to the TPM by using power from the wall  
:935 socket. For a PC mobile platform, power may not be available when only using the internal  
:936 battery. It is a platform designer's decision as to when and how they supply power to the  
:937 TPM to maintain the timing ticks.

:938 The TPM can provide a time stamping service. The TPM does not maintain an internal  
:939 secure source of time rather the TPM maintains a count of the number of ticks that have  
:940 occurred since the start of a timing session.

:941 On a PC, the TPM may use the timing source of the LPC bus or it may have a separate clock  
:942 circuit. The anticipation is that availability of the TPM timing ticks and the tick resolution is  
:943 an area of differentiation available to TPM manufactures and platform providers.

### :944 **End of informative comment**

- :945 1. This specification makes no requirement on the mechanism required to implement the  
:946 tick counter in the TPM.
- :947 2. This specification makes no requirement on the ability for the TPM to maintain the  
:948 ability to increment the tick counter across power cycles or in different power modes on  
:949 a platform.

## :950 **20.1 Tick Components**

### :951 **Start of informative comment**

:952 The TPM maintains for each tick session the following values:

:953 Tick Count Value (TCV) – The count of ticks for the session.

:954 Tick Increment Rate (TIR) – The rate at which the TCV is incremented. There is a set  
:955 relationship between TIR and seconds, the relationship is set during manufacturing of the  
:956 TPM and platform. This is the TPM\_CURRENT\_TICKS -> tickRate parameter.

:957 Tick Session Nonce (TSN) – The session nonce is set at the start of each tick session.

### :958 **End of informative comment**

- :959 1. The TCV MUST be set to 0 at the start of each tick session. The TPM MUST start a new  
:960 tick session if the TPM loses the ability to increment the TCV according to the TIR.
- :961 2. The TSN MUST be set to the next value from the TPM RNG at the start of each new tick  
:962 session. When the TPM loses the ability to increment the TCV according to the TIR the  
:963 TSN MUST be set to NULLS.

:964 3. If the TPM discovers tampering with the tick count (through timing changes etc) the TPM  
:965 MUST treat this as an attack and shut down further TPM processing as if a self-test had  
:966 failed.

## :967 **20.2 Basic Tick Stamp**

### :968 **Start of informative comment**

:969 The TPM does not provide a secure time source, nor does it provide a signature over some  
:970 time value. The TPM does provide a signature over some current tick counter. The signature  
:971 covers a hash of the blob to stamp, the current counter value, the tick session nonce and  
:972 some fixed text.

:973 The Tick Stamp Result (TSR) is the result of the tick stamp operation that associates the  
:974 TCV, TSN and the blob. There is no association with the TCV or TSR with any UTC value at  
:975 this point.

### :976 **End of informative comment**

## :977 **20.3 Associating a TCV with UTC**

### :978 **Start of informative comment**

:979 An outside observer would like to associate a TCV with a relevant time value. The following  
:980 shows how to accomplish this task. This protocol is not required but shows how to  
:981 accomplish the job.

:982 EntityA wants to have BlobA time stamped. EntityA performs TPM\_TickStamp on BlobA.  
:983 This creates TSRB (TickStampResult for Blob). TSRB records TSRBTCV, the current value of  
:984 the TCV, and associates TSRBTCV with the TSN.

:985 Now EntityA needs to associate a TCV with a real time value. EntityA creates blob TS which  
:986 contains some known text like "Tick Stamp". EntityA performs TPM\_TickStamp on blob TS  
:987 creating TSR1. This records TSR1TCV, the current value of the TCV, and associates  
:988 TSR1TCV with the TSN.

:989 EntityA sends TSR1 to a Time Authority (TA). TA creates TA1 which associates TSR1 with  
:990 UTC1.

:991 EntityA now performs TPM\_TickStamp on TA1. This creates TSR2. TSR2 records TSR2TCV,  
:992 the current values of the TCV, and associates TSR2TCV with the TSN.

### :993 **Analyzing the associations**

:994 EntityA has three TSR's; TSRB the TSR of the blob that we wanted to time stamp, TSR1 the  
:995 TSR associated with the TS blob and TSR2 the TSR associated with the information from  
:996 the TA. EntityA wants to show an association between the various TSR such that there is a  
:997 connection between the UTC and BlobA.

:998 From TSR1 EntityA knows that TSR1TCV is less than the UTC. This is true since the TA is  
:999 signing TSR1 and the creation of TSR1 has to occur before the signature of TSR1. Stated  
:000 mathematically:

$$:001 \quad \text{TSR1TCV} < \text{UTC1}$$

:002 From TSR2 EntityA knows that TSR2TCV is greater than the UTC. This is true since the  
:003 TPM is signing TA1 which must be created before it was signed. Stated mathematically:

:004  $TSR2TCV > UTC1$

:005 EntityA now knows  $TSR1TCV$  and  $TSR2TCV$  bound  $UTC1$ . Stated mathematically:

:006  $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR2TCV$

:007 This association holds true if the TSN for  $TSR1$  matches the TSN for  $TSR2$ . If some event  
:008 occurs that causes the TPM to create a new TSN and restart the TCV then EntityA must  
:009 start the process all over again.

:010 EntityA does not know when  $UTC1$  occurred in the interval between  $TSR1TCV$  and  
:011  $TSR2TCV$ . In fact, the value  $TSR2TCV$  minus  $TSR1TCV$  ( $TSRDELTA$ ) is the amount of  
:012 uncertainty to which a TCV value should be associated with  $UTC1$ . Stated mathematically:

:013  $TSRDELTA = TSR2TCV - TSR1TCV$  iff  $TSR1TSN = TSR2TSN$

:014 EntityA can obtain  $k1$  the relationship between ticks and seconds using the  
:015  $TPM\_GetCapability$  command. EntityA also obtains  $k2$  the possible errors per tick. EntityA  
:016 now calculate  $DeltaTime$  which is the conversion of ticks to seconds and the  $TSRDELTA$ .  
:017 State mathematically:

:018  $DeltaTime = (k1 * TSRDELTA) + (k2 * TSRDELTA)$

:019

:020 To make the association between  $DeltaTime$ ,  $UTC$  and  $TSRB$  note the following:

:021  $DeltaTime = (k1*TSRDelta) + Drift = TimeChange + Drift$

:022 Where  $ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift) < k2*TSRDelta$

:023 (1)  $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR2TCV$

:024 True since you cannot sign something before it exists

:025 (2)  $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR1TCV + TSR2TCV - TSR1TCV \leq TSR1TCV + DeltaTime (=$   
:026  $TSR1TCV + TimeChange + Drift)$

:027 True because  $TSR1$  and  $TSR2$  are in the same tick session proved by the same TSN. (Note  
:028  $TimeChange$  is positive!)

:029 (3)  $0 < UTC1 - TSR1TCV < DeltaTime$

:030 (Subtract  $TSR1TCV$  from all sides)

:031 (4)  $0 > TSR1TCV - UTC1 > -DeltaTime = -TimeChange - Drift$

:032 (Multiply through by -1)

:033 (5)  $TimeChange/2 > [TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)] > -TimeChange/2 - Drift$

:034 (add  $TimeChange/2$  to all sides)

:035 (6)  $TimeChange/2 + ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift) > [TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)]$   
:036  $> -TimeChange/2 - ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift)$

:037 Making the large side of an equality bigger, and potentially making the small side smaller.

:038 (7)  $ABSOLUTEVALUE[TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)] < TimeChange/2 +$   
:039  $ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift)$

:040 (Definition of Absolute Value, and  $TimeChange$  is positive)

:041

:042 From which we see that  $TSR1TCV$  is approximately  $UTC1 - TimeChange/2$  with a symmetric  
:043 possible error of  $TimeChange/2 + AbsoluteValue(Drift)$

:044 We can calculate this error as being less than  $k1 * TSRDelta/2 + k2 * TSRDelta$ .

:045

:046 EntityA now has the ability to associate  $UTC1$  with  $TSBTSV$  and by allow others to know  
:047 that  $BlobA$  was signed at a certain time. First  $TSBTSN$  must equal  $TSR1TSN$ . This  
:048 relationship allows EntityA to assert that  $TSRB$  occurs during the same session as  $TSR1$   
:049 and  $TSR2$ .

:050 EntityA calculates  $HashTimeDelta$  which is the difference between  $TSR1TCV$  and  $TSRBTCV$   
:051 and the conversion of ticks to seconds.  $HashTimeDelta$  includes the same  $k1$  and  $k2$  as  
:052 calculated above. Stated mathematically:

:053 
$$E = k2(TSR1TCV - TSRBTCV)$$

:054 
$$HashTimeDelta = k1(TSR1TCV - TSRBTCV) + E$$

:055 Now the following relationships hold:

:056 (1)  $UTC1 - DeltaTime < TSRBTCV - (TSRBTCV - TSR1TCV) < UTC1$

:057 (2)  $UTC1 - DeltaTime < TSRBTCV + HashTimeDelta + E < UTC1$

:058 (3)  $UTC1 - HashTimeDelta - DeltaTime - E < TSRBTCV < UTC1 - HashTimeDelta + E$

:059 (4)  $TSRBTCV = (UTC1 - HashTimeDelta - DeltaTime/2) + (E + DeltaTime/2)$

:060 This has the correct properties

:061 As  $DeltaTime$  grows so does the error bar (or the uncertainty of the time association)

:062 As the difference between the time of the measurement and the time of the time stamp  
:063 grows, so does the  $E$  as a function of  $E$  is  $HashTimeDelta$

:064 **End of informative comment**

## :065 20.4 Additional Comments and Questions

:066 **Start of informative comment**

### :067 Time Difference

:068 If two things are time stamped, say at  $TCVs$  and  $TCVe$  (for  $TCV$  at start,  $TCV$  at end) then  
:069 any entity can calculate the time difference between the two events and will get:

:070 
$$TimeDiff = k1 * |TCVe - TCVs| + k2 * |TCVe - TCVs|$$

:071 This  $TimeDiff$  does not indicate what time the two events occurred at it merely gives the  
:072 time between the events. This time difference doesn't require a Time Authority.

### :073 Why is TSN (tick session nonce) required?

:074 Without it, there is no way to associate a Time Authority stamp with any  $TSV$ , as the  $TSV$   
:075 resets at the start of every tick session. The  $TSN$  proves that the concatenation of  $TSV$  and  
:076  $TSN$  is unique.

### :077 How does the protocol prevent replay attacks?

:078 The TPM signs the TSR sent to the TA. This TSR contains the unique combination of TSV  
:079 and TSN. Since the TSN is unique to a tick session and the TSV continues to increment any  
:080 attempt to recreate the same TSR will fail. If the TPM is reset such that the TSV is at the  
:081 same value, the TSN will be a new value. If the TPM is not reset then the TSV continues to  
:082 increment and will not repeat.

### :083 **How does EntityA know that the TSR1 that the TA signs is recent?**

:084 It doesn't. EntityA checks however to ensure that the TSN is the same in all TSR. This  
:085 ensures that the values are all related. If TSR1 is an old value then the HashTimeDelta will  
:086 be a large value and the uncertainty of the relation of the signing to the UTC will be large.

### :087 **Why does associating a UTC time with a TSV take two steps?**

:088 This is because it takes some time between when a request goes to a time authority and  
:089 when the response comes. The protocol measures this time and uses it to create the time  
:090 deltas. The relationship of TSV to UTC is somewhere between the request and response.

### :091 **Affect of power on the tick counter**

:092 As the TPM is not required to maintain an internal clock and battery, how the platform  
:093 provides power to the TPM affects the ability to maintain the tick counter. The original  
:094 mechanism had the TPM maintaining an indication of how the platform provided the power.  
:095 Previous performance does not predict what might occur in the future, as the platform may  
:096 be unable to continue to provide the power (dead battery, pulled plug from wall etc). With  
:097 the knowledge that the TPM cannot accurately report the future, the specification deleted  
:098 tick type from the TPM.

:099 The information relative to what the platform is doing to provide power to the TPM is now a  
:100 responsibility of the TSS. The TSS should first determine how the platform was built, using  
:101 the platform credential. The TSS should also attempt to determine the actual performance  
:102 of the TPM in regards to maintaining the tick count. The TSS can help in this determination  
:103 by keeping track of the tick nonce. The tick nonce changes each time the tick count is lost.  
:104 By comparing the tick nonce across system events the TSS can obtain a heuristic that  
:105 represents how the platform provides power to the TPM.

:106 The TSS must define a standard set of values as to when the tick nonce continues to  
:107 increment across system events.

:108 The following are some PC implementations that give the flavor of what is possible regarding  
:109 the clock on a specific platform.

:110 TICK\_INC - No TPM power battery. Clock comes from PCI clock, may stop from time to time  
:111 due to clock stopping protocols such as CLKRUN.

:112 TICK\_POWER - No TPM power battery. Clock source comes from PCI clock, always runs  
:113 except in S3+.

:114 TICK\_STSTATE - External power (might be battery) consumed by TPM during S3 only. Clock  
:115 source comes either from a system clock that runs during S3 or from crystal/internal TPM  
:116 source.

:117 TICK\_STCLEAR - Standby power used to drive counter. In desktop, may be related to when  
:118 system is plugged into wall. Clock source comes either from a system clock that runs when  
:119 standby power is available or from crystal/internal TPM source.

120 TICK\_ALWAYS - TPM power battery. Clock source comes either from a battery powered  
121 system clock that crystal/internal TPM source.  
122 **End of informative comment**

## 123 **21. Context Management**

### 124 **Start of informative comment**

125 The TPM is a device that contains limited resources. Caching of the resources may occur  
126 without knowledge or assistance from the application that loaded the resource. In version  
127 1.1 there were two types of resources that had need of this support keys and authorization  
128 sessions. Each type had a separate load and restore operation. In version 1.2 there is the  
129 addition of transport sessions. To handle these situations generically 1.2 is defining a single  
130 context manager that all types of resources may use.

131 The concept is simple, a resource manager requests that wrapping of a resource in a  
132 manner that securely protects the resource and only allows the restoring of the resource on  
133 the same TPM and during the same operational cycle.

134 Consider a key successfully loaded on the TPM. The parent keys that loaded the key may  
135 have required a different set of PCR registers than are currently set on the TPM. For  
136 example, the end result is to have key5 loaded. Key3 is protected by key2, which is  
137 protected by key1, which is protected by the SRK. Key1 requires PCR1 to be in a certain  
138 state, key2 requires PCR2 to load and key3 requires PCR3. Now at some point in time after  
139 key1 loaded key2, PCR1 was extended with additional information. If key3 is evicted then  
140 there is no way to reload key3 until the platform is rebooted. To avoid this type of problem  
141 the TPM can execute context management routines. The context management routines save  
142 key3 in its current state and allow the TPM to restore the state without having to use the  
143 parent keys (key1 and key2).

144 There are numerous issues with performing context management on sessions. These issues  
145 revolve around the use of the nonces in the session. If an attacker can successfully store,  
146 attack, fail and then reload the session the attacker can repeat the attack many times.

147 The key that the TPM uses to encrypt blobs may be a volatile or non-volatile key. One  
148 mechanism would be for the TPM to generate a new key on each TPM\_Startup command.  
149 Another would be for the TPM to generate the key and store it persistently in the  
150 TPM\_PERMANENT\_DATA area.

151 The symmetric key should be relatively the same strength as a 2048-bit RSA key. 128-bit  
152 AES or a full three key triple DES would be appropriate.

### 153 **End of informative comment**

- 154 1. Context management is a required function.
- 155 2. Execution of the context commands MUST NOT cause the exposure of any TPM shielded  
156 location.
- 157 3. The TPM MUST NOT allow the context saving of the EK or the SRK.
- 158 4. The TPM MAY use either symmetric or asymmetric encryption. For asymmetric  
159 encryption the TPM MUST use a 2048 RSA key.
- 160 5. A wrapped session blob MUST only be loadable once. A wrapped key blob MAY be  
161 reloadable.
- 162 6. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 16 concurrent saved contexts other than keys.  
163 There is no minimum or maximum number of concurrent saved key contexts.

- ¶164 7. All external session blobs (of type TPM\_RT\_TRANS or TPM\_RT\_AUTH) can be invalidated  
¶165 upon specific request (via TPM\_FlushXXX using TPM\_RT\_CONTEXT as resource type),  
¶166 this does not include session blobs of type TPM\_RT\_KEY.
- ¶167 8. External session blobs are invalidated on TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR) or on  
¶168 TPM\_Startup(any) based on the startup effects settings
- ¶169 a. Session blobs of type TPM\_RT\_KEY with the attributes of parentPCRStatus = FALSE  
¶170 and IsVolatile = FALSE SHOULD not be invalidated on TPM\_Startup(any)
- ¶171 9. All external sessions invalidate automatically upon installation of a new owner due to the  
¶172 setting of a new tpmProof.
- ¶173 10. If the TPM enters failure mode ALL session blobs (including keys) MUST be invalidated
- ¶174 a. Invalidation includes ensuring that contextNonceKey and contextNonceSession will  
¶175 change when the TPM recovers from the failure.
- ¶176 11. Attempts to restore a wrapped blob after the successful completion of  
¶177 TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR) MUST fail. The exception is a wrapped key blob which may be  
¶178 long-term and which MAY restore after a TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR).
- ¶179 12. The save and load context commands are the generic equivalent to the context  
¶180 commands in 1.1. Version 1.2 deprecates the following commands:
- ¶181 a. TPM\_AuthSaveContext
- ¶182 b. TPM\_AuthLoadContext
- ¶183 c. TPM\_KeySaveContext
- ¶184 d. TPM\_KeyLoadContext

185 **22. Eviction**

186 **Start of informative comment**

187 The TPM has numerous resources held inside of the TPM that may need eviction. The need  
188 for eviction occurs when the number or resources in use by the TPM exceed the available  
189 space. For resources that are hard to reload (i.e. keys tied to PCR values) the outside entity  
190 should first perform a context save before evicting items.

191 In version 1.1 there were separate commands to evict separate resource types. This new  
192 command set uses the resource types defined for context saving and creates a generic  
193 command that will evict all resource types.

194 **End of informative comment**

- 195 1. The TPM MUST NOT flush the EK or SRK using this command.
- 196 2. Version 1.2 deprecates the following commands:
- 197 a. TPM\_Terminate\_Handle
  - 198 b. TPM\_EvictKey
  - 199 c. TPM\_Reset

## 23. Session pool

### Start of informative comment

The TPM supports two types of sessions that use the rolling nonce protocol, authorization and transport. These sessions require much of the same handling and internal storage by the TPM. To allow more flexibility the internal storage for these sessions will be defined as coming from the same pool (or area).

The pool requires that three (3) sessions be available. The entities using the TPM can determine the usage models of what sessions are active. This allows a TPM to have 3 authorization sessions or 3 transport sessions at one time.

Using all available pool resources for transport sessions is not a very usable model. If all resources are in use by transport there is no resources available for authorization sessions and hence no ability to execute any commands requiring authorization. A more realistic model would be to have two transport sessions and one authorization session. While this is an unrealistic model for actual execution there will be no requirement that the TPM prevent this from happening. A model of how it could occur would be when there are two applications running, both using 2 transport sessions and one authorization session. When switching between the applications if the requirement was that only 2 transport sessions could be active the TSS that would provide the context switch would have to ensure that the transport sessions were context saved first.

Sessions can be virtualized, so while the TPM may only have 3 loaded sessions, there may be an unlimited number of context saved sessions stored outside the TPM.

### End of informative comment

1. The TPM MUST support a minimum of three (3) concurrent sessions. The sessions MAY be any mix of authentication and transport sessions.

## 24. Initialization Operations

### Start of informative comment

Initialization is the process where the TPM establishes an operating environment from a no power state. Initialization occurs in many different flavors with PCR, keys, handles, sessions and context blobs all initialized, reloaded or unloaded according to the rules and platform environment.

Initialization does not affect the operational characteristics of the TPM (like TPM Ownership).

Clear is the process of returning the TPM to factory defaults. The clear commands need protection from unauthorized use and must allow for the possibility of changing Owners. The clear process requires authorization to execute and locks to prevent unauthorized operation.

The clear functionality performs the following tasks:

Invalidate SRK. Invalidating the SRK invalidates all protected storage areas below the SRK in the hierarchy. The areas below are not destroyed they just have no mechanism to be loaded anymore.

All TPM volatile and non-volatile data is set to default value except the endorsement key pair. The clear includes the Owner-AuthData, so after performing the clear, the TPM has no Owner. The PCR values are undefined after a clear operation.

The TPM shall return TPM\_NOSRK until an Owner is set. After the execution of the clear command, the TPM must go through a power cycle to properly set the PCR values.

The Owner has ultimate control of when a clear occurs.

The Owner can perform the TPM\_OwnerClear command using the TPM Owner authorization. If the Owner wishes to disable this clear command and require physical access to perform the clear, the Owner can issue the TPM\_DisableOwnerClear command.

During the TPM startup processing anyone with physical access to the machine can issue the TPM\_ForceClear command. This command performs the clear. The TPM\_DisableForceClear disables the TPM\_ForceClear command for the duration of the power cycle. TSS startup code that does not issue the TPM\_DisableForceClear leaves the TPM vulnerable to a denial of service attack. The assumption is that the TSS startup code will issue the TPM\_DisableForceClear on each power cycle after the TSS determines that it will not be necessary to issue the TPM\_ForceClear command. The purpose of the TPM\_ForceClear command is to recover from the state where the Owner has lost or forgotten the TPM Ownership token.

The TPM\_ForceClear must only be possible when the issuer has physical access to the platform. The manufacturer of a platform determines the exact definition of physical access.

### End of informative comment

1. The TPM MUST support proper initialization. Initialization MUST properly configure the TPM to execute in the platform environment.
2. Initialization MUST ensure that handles, keys, sessions, context blobs and PCR are properly initialized, reloaded or invalidated according to the platform environment.

- 265 3. The description of the platform environment arrives at the TPM in a combination of  
266 TPM\_Init and TPM\_Startup.

i267 **25. HMAC digest rules**

i268 **Start of informative comment**

i269 The order of calculation of the HMAC is critical to being able to validate the authorization  
i270 and parameters of a command. All commands use the same order and format for the  
i271 calculation.

i272 A more exact representation of a command would be the following

i273 \*\*\*\*\*  
i274 \* TAG | LEN | ORD | HANDLES | DATA | AUTH1 (o) | AUTH2 (o) \*  
i275 \*\*\*\*\*

i276 The text area for the HMAC calculation would be the concatenation of the following:

i277 ORD || DATA

i278 **End of informative comment**

i279 The HMAC digest of parameters uses the following order

- i280 1. Skip tag and length  
i281 2. Include ordinal. This is the 1S parameter in the HMAC column for each command  
i282 3. Skip handle(s). This includes key and other session handles  
i283 4. Include data and other parameters for the command. This starts with the 2S parameter  
i284 in the HMAC column for each command.  
i285 5. Skip all AuthData values.

## 26. Generic authorization session termination rules

### Start of informative comment

These rules are the generic rules that govern all authorization sessions, a specific session type may have additional rules or modifications of the generic rules

### End of informative comment

1. A TPM SHALL unilaterally perform the actions of TPM\_FlushSpecific for a session upon any of the following events
  - a. “continueUse” flag in the authorization session is FALSE
  - b. Shared secret of the session in use to create the exclusive-or for confidentiality of data. Example is TPM\_ChangeAuth terminates the authorization session. TPM\_ExecuteTransport does not terminate the session due to protections inherent in transport sessions.
  - c. When the associated entity is invalidated
  - d. When the command returns a fatal error. This is due to error returns not setting a nonceEven. Without a new nonceEven the rolling nonces sequence is broken hence the TPM MUST terminate the session.
  - e. Failure of an authorization check at the start of the command
  - f. Execution of TPM\_Startup(ST\_CLEAR)
2. The TPM MAY perform the actions of TPM\_FlushSpecific for a session upon the following events
  - a. Execution of TPM\_Startup(ST\_STATE)

## !307 **27. PCR Grand Unification Theory**

### !308 **Start of informative comment**

!309 This section discusses the unification of PCR definition and use with locality.

!310 The PCR allow the definition of a platform configuration. With the addition of locality, the  
!311 meaning of a configuration is somewhat larger. This section defines how the two combine to  
!312 provide the TPM user information relative to the platform configuration.

!313 These are the issues regarding PCR and locality at this time

### !314 **Definition of configuration**

!315 A configuration is the combination of PCR, PCR attributes and the locality.

### !316 **Passing the creators configuration to the user of data**

!317 For many reasons, from the creator's viewpoint and the user's viewpoint, the configuration  
!318 in use by the creator is important information. This information needs transmitting to the  
!319 user with the data and with integrity.

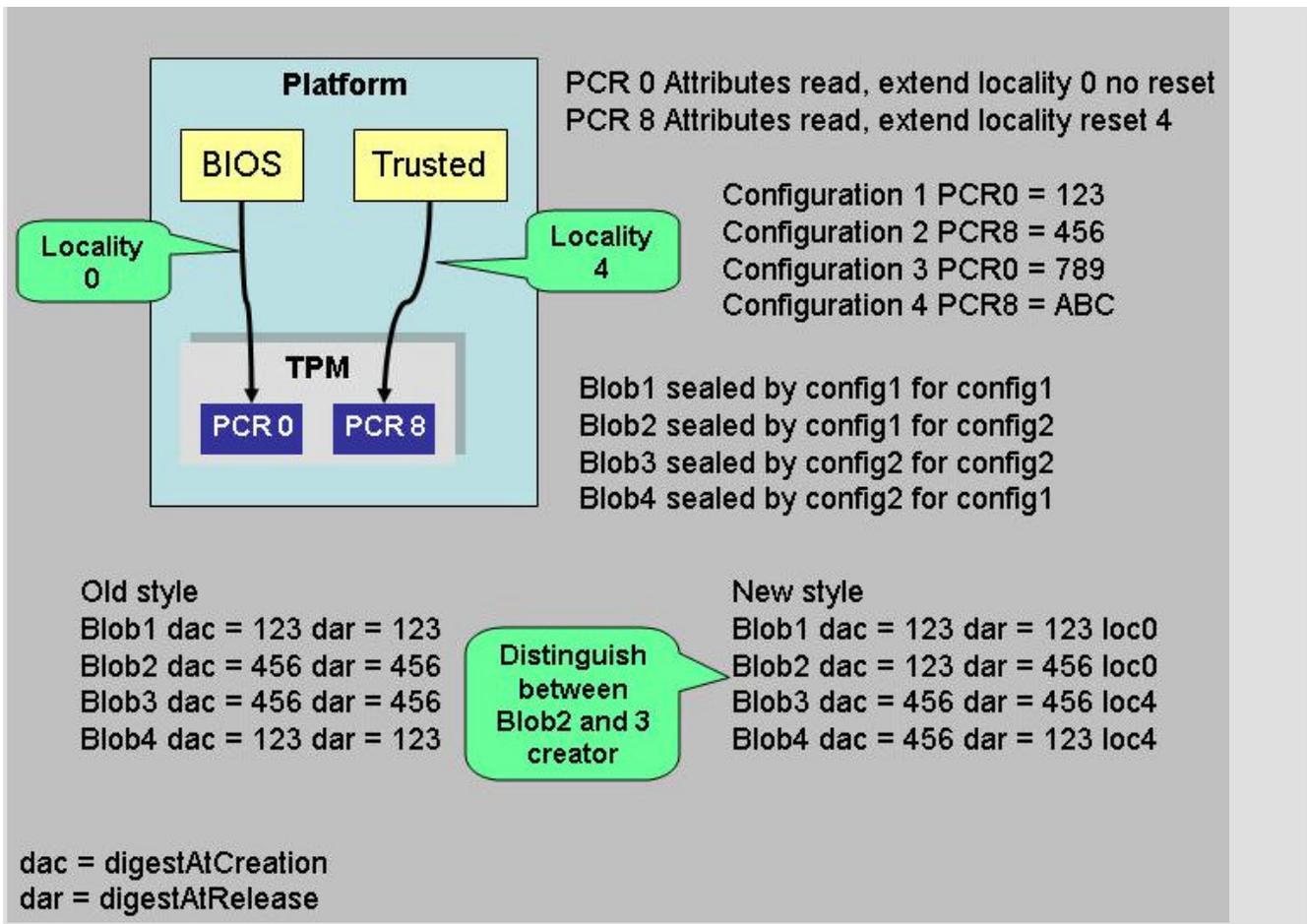
!320 The configuration must include the locality and may not be the same configuration that will  
!321 use the data. This allows one configuration to seal a value for future use and the end user  
!322 to know the genealogy of where the data comes from.

### !323 **Definition of "Use"**

!324 See the definition of TPM\_PCR\_ATTRIBUTES for the attributes and the normative  
!325 statements regarding the use of the attributes. The use of a configuration is when the TPM  
!326 needs to ensure that the proper platform configuration is present. The first example is for  
!327 Unseal, the TPM must only release the information sealed if the platform configuration  
!328 matches the configuration specified by the seal creator. Here the use of locality is implicit in  
!329 the PCR attributes, if PCR8 requires locality 2 to be present then the seal creator ensures  
!330 that locality 2 is asserted by defining a configuration that uses PCR8.

!331 The creation of a blob that specifies a configuration for use is not a "use" itself. So the SEAL  
!332 command does is not a use for specifying the use of a PCR configuration.

!333

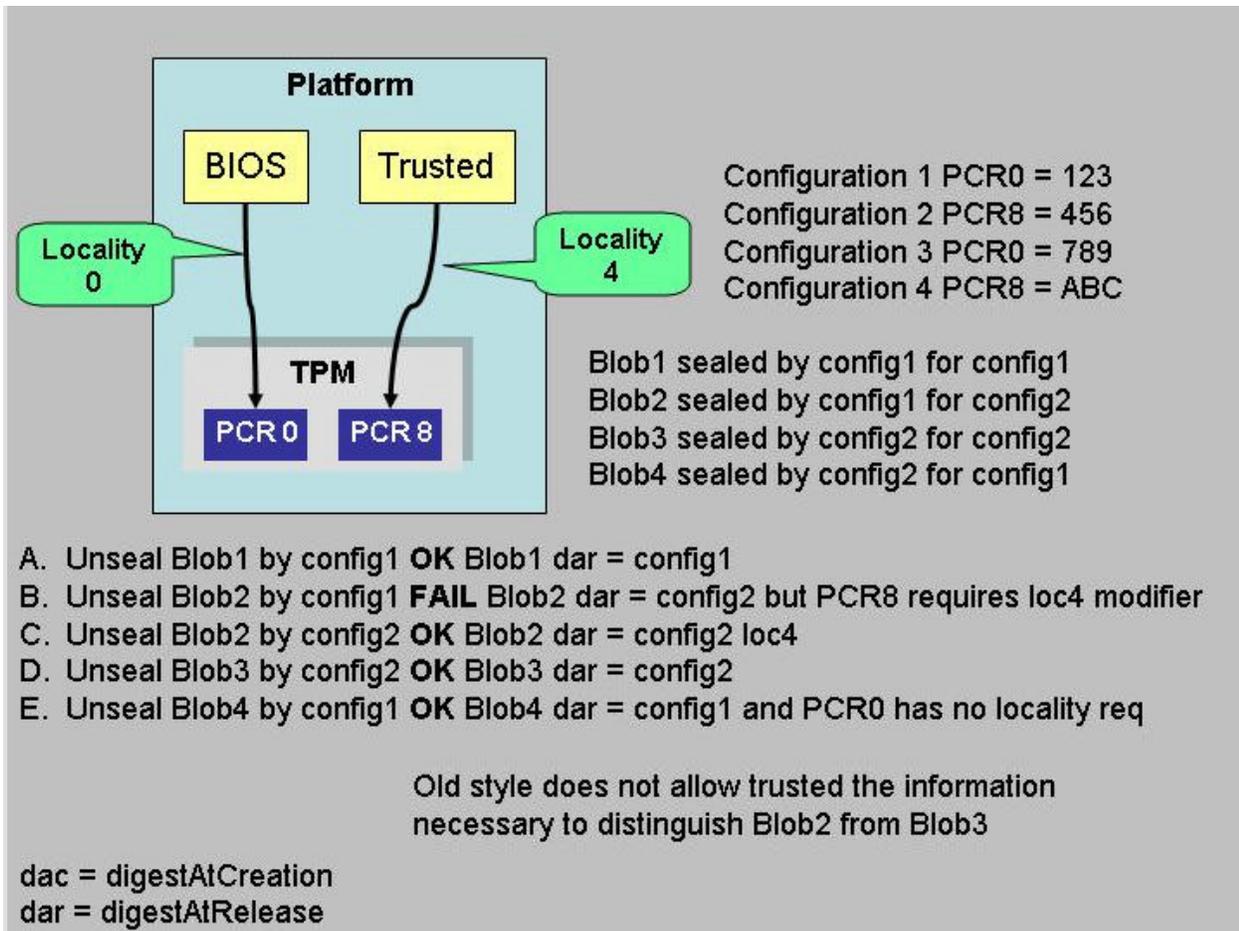


334

335

336

By using the “new style” or TPM\_PCR\_INFO\_LONG structure the user can determine that Blob2 is different that Blob3.



:337

:338 Case B is the only failure and this shows the use of the locality modifier and PCR locality  
:339 attribute.

:340 Additional attempts are obvious failures, config3 and config4 are unable to unseal any of  
:341 the 4 blobs.

:342 One example is illustrative of the problems of just specifying locality without an  
:343 accompanying PCR. Assume Blob5 which specifies a dar of config1 and a locality 4 modifier.  
:344 Now either config2 or config4 can unseal Blob5. In fact there is no way to restrict ANY  
:345 process that gains access to locality 4 from performing the unseal. As many platforms will  
:346 have no restrictions as to which process can load in locality 4 there is no additional benefit  
:347 of specifying a locality modifier. If the sealer wants protections, they need to specify a PCR  
:348 that requires a locality modifier.

### :349 **Defining locality modifiers dynamically**

:350 This feature would enable the platform to specify how and when a locality modifier applies  
:351 to a PCR. The current definition of PCR attributes has the values set in TPM manufacturing  
:352 and static for all TPM in a specific platform type (like a PC).

:353 Defining dynamic attributes would make the use of a PCR very difficult. The sealer would  
:354 have to have some way of ensuring that their wishes were enforced and challengers would  
:355 have to pay close attention to the current PCR attributes. For these reasons the setting of

the PCR attributes is defined as a static operation made during the platform specific specification.

**End of informative comment**

## 27.1 Validate Key for use

**Start of informative comment**

The following shows the order and checks done before the use of a key that has PCR or locality restrictions.

Note that there is no check for the PCR registers on the DSAP session. This is due to the fact that DSAP checks for the continued validity of the PCR that are attached to the DSAP and any change causes the invalidation of the DSAP session.

The checks must validate the locality of the DSAP session as the PCR registers in use could have locality restrictions.

**End of informative comment**

1. If the authorization session is DSAP
  - a. If the DSAP -> localityAtRelease is not 0x1F (or in other words some localities are not allowed)
    - i. Validate that TPM\_STANY\_FLAGS -> localityModifier is matched by DSAP -> pcrInfo -> localityAtRelease, on mismatch return TPM\_BAD\_LOCALITY
  - b. If DSAP -> digestAtRelease is not 0
    - i. Calculate the current digest and compare to digestAtRelease, return TPM\_BAD\_PCR on mismatch
  - c. If the DSAP points to an ordinal delegation
    - i. Check that the DSAP authorizes the use of the intended ordinal
  - d. If the DSAP points to a key delegation
    - i. Check that the DSAP authorizes the use of the key
  - e. If the key delegated is a CMK key
    - i. The TPM MUST check the CMK\_DELEGATE restrictions
2. Set LK to the loaded key that is being used
3. If LK -> pcrInfoSize is not 0
  - a. If LK -> pcrInfo -> releasePCRSelection identifies the use of one or more PCR
    - i. Calculate H1 a TPM\_COMPOSITE\_HASH of the PCR selected by LK -> pcrInfo -> releasePCRSelection
    - ii. Compare H1 to LK -> pcrInfo -> digestAtRelease on mismatch return TPM\_WRONGPCRVAL
  - b. If localityAtRelease is NOT 0x1F
    - i. Validate that TPM\_STANY\_FLAGS -> localityModifier is matched by LK -> pcrInfo -> localityAtRelease on mismatch return TPM\_BAD\_LOCALITY

1393 4. Allow use of the key

## 394 28. Non Volatile Storage

### 395 **Start of informative comment**

396 The TPM contains protected non-volatile storage. There are many uses of this type of area;  
397 however, a TPM needs to have a defined set of operations that touch any protected area.  
398 The idea behind these instructions is to provide an area that the manufacturers and owner  
399 can use for storing information in the TPM.

400 The TCG will define a limited set of information that it sees a need of storing in the TPM.  
401 The TPM and platform manufacturer may add additional areas.

402 The NV storage area has a limited use before it will no longer operate, hence the NV  
403 commands are under TPM Owner control.

404 A defined set of indexes are available when no TPM Owner is present to allow TPM and  
405 platform manufacturers the ability to fill in values before a TPM Owner exists.

406 To locate if an index is available, use TPM\_GetCapability to return the index and the size of  
407 the are in use by the index.

408 The area may not be larger than the TPM input buffer. The TPM will report the maximum  
409 size available to allocate.

410 The storage area is an opaque area to the TPM. The TPM, other than providing the storage,  
411 does not review the internals of the area.

412 To SEAL a blob the creator of the area specifies the use of PCR registers to read the value.  
413 This is the exact property of SEAL.

414 To obtain a signed indication of what is in a NV store area the caller would setup a  
415 transport session with logging on and then get the signed log. The log shows the parameters  
416 so the caller can validate that the TPM holds the value.

417 There is an attribute, for each index, that defines the expected write scheme for the index.  
418 The TPM may handle data storage differently based on the write scheme attribute that  
419 defines the expected for the index. Whenever possible the NV memory should be allocated  
420 with the write scheme attribute set to update as one block and not as individual bytes.

### 421 **End of informative comment**

- 422 1. The TPM MUST support the NV commands. The TPM MUST support the NV area as  
423 defined by the TPM\_NV\_INDEX values.
- 424 2. The TPM MAY manage the storage area using any allocation and garbage collection  
425 scheme.
- 426 3. To remove an area from the NV store the TPM owner would use the  
427 TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace command with a size of 0. Any authorized user can change the  
428 value written in the NV store.
- 429 4. The TPM MUST treat the NV area as a shielded location.
  - 430 a. The TPM does not provide any additional protections (like additional encryption) to  
431 the NV area.
- 432 5. If a write operation is interrupted, then the TPM makes no guarantees about the data  
433 stored at the specified index. It MAY be the previous value, MAY be the new value or

- ‡434 MAY be undefined or unpredictable. After the interruption the TPM MAY indicate that  
‡435 the index contains unpredictable information.
- ‡436 a. The TPM MUST ensure that in case of interruption of a write to an index that all  
‡437 other indexes are not affected
- ‡438 6. Minimum size of NV area is platform specific. The maximum area is TPM vendor specific.
- ‡439 7. A TPM MUST NOT use the NV area to store any data dependent on data structures  
‡440 defined in Part II of the TPM specifications, except for the NV Storage Structures implied  
‡441 by required index values or reserved index values
- ‡442 8. A TPM MUST NOT use the NV area to store any data dependent on data structures  
‡443 defined in Part II of the TPM specifications, except for the NV Storage Structures implied  
‡444 by required index values or reserved index values

## ‡445 **28.1 NV storage design principles**

### ‡446 **Start of informative comment**

‡447 This section lists the design principles that motivate the NV area in the TPM. There was the  
‡448 realization that the current design made use of NV storage but not necessarily efficiently.  
‡449 The DIR, BIT and other commands placed demands on the TPM designer and required  
‡450 areas that while allowing for flexible use reserved space most likely never used (like DIR for  
‡451 locality 1).

‡452 The following are the design principles that drive the function definitions.

- ‡453 1. Provide efficient use of NV area on the TPM. NV storage is a very limited resource and  
‡454 data stored in the NV area should be as small as possible.
- ‡455 2. The TPM does not control, edit, validate or manipulate in any manner the information in  
‡456 the NV store. The TPM is merely a storage device. The TPM does enforce the access rules as  
‡457 set by the TPM Owner.
- ‡458 3. Allocation of the NV area for a specific use must be under control of the TPM Owner.
- ‡459 4. The TPM Owner, when defining the area to use, will set the access and use policy for the  
‡460 area. The TPM Owner can set AuthData values, delegations, PCR values and other controls  
‡461 on the access allowed to the area.
- ‡462 5. There must be a capability to allow TPM and platform manufacturers to use this area  
‡463 without a TPM Owner being present. This allows the manufacturer to place information into  
‡464 the TPM without an onerous manufacturing flow. Information in this category would  
‡465 include EK credential and platform credential.
- ‡466 6. The management and use of the NV area should not require a large number of ordinals.
- ‡467 7. The management and use of the NV area should not introduce new operating strategies  
‡468 into the TPM and should be easy to implement.

### ‡469 **End of informative comment**

## ‡470 **28.1.1 NV Storage use models**

### ‡471 **Start of informative comment**

‡472 This informative section describes some of the anticipated use models and the attributes a  
 ‡473 user of the storage area would need to set.

‡474

‡475 **Owner authorized for all access**

‡476 TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace: attributes = PER\_OWERREAD || PER\_OWNERWRITE

‡477 WriteValue(TPM Owner Auth, data)

‡478 ReadValue(TPM Owner Auth, data)

‡479

‡480 **Set AuthData value**

‡481 TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace: attributes = PER\_AUTHREAD || PER\_AUTHWRITE, auth =  
 ‡482 authValue

‡483 WriteValue( authValue, data)

‡484 ReadValue( authValue, data)

‡485

‡486 **Write once, only way to change is to delete and redefine**

‡487 TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace: attributes = PER\_WRITEDEFINE

‡488 WriteValue( size = x, data) // successful

‡489 WriteValue(size = 0) // locks

‡490 WriteValue(size = x) // fails

‡491 ...

‡492 TPM\_Startup(ST\_Clear) // Does not affect lock

‡493 WriteValue(size = x, data) // fails

‡494

‡495 **Write until specific index is locked, lock reset on Startup(ST\_Clear)**

‡496 TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace: index = 3, attributes = PER\_WRITE\_STCLEAR

‡497 TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace: index = 5, attributes = PER\_WRITE\_STCLEAR

‡498 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // successful

‡499 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

‡500 WriteValue(index = 3, size = 0) // locks

‡501 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // fails

‡502 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

‡503 ...

‡504 TPM\_Startup(ST\_Clear) // clears lock

‡505 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // successful

‡506 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

```
!507
!508 Write until index 0 is locked, lock reset by Startup(ST_Clear)
!509 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_GLOBALLOCK, index = 5
!510 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_GLOBALLOCK, index = 3
!511 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
!512 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
!513
!514 WriteValue(index = 0) // sets SV -> bGlobalLock to TRUE
!515 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // fails
!516 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // fails
!517 ...
!518 TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // clears lock
!519 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
!520 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
!521 End of informative comment
```

## !522 **28.2 Use of NV storage during manufacturing**

### !523 **Start of informative comment**

!524 The TPM needs the ability to write values to the NV store during manufacturing. It is  
!525 possible that the values written at this time would require authorization during normal TPM  
!526 use. The actual enforcement of these authorizations during manufacturing would cause  
!527 numerous problems for the manufacturer.

!528 The TPM will not enforce the NV authorization restrictions until the execution of a  
!529 TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace with the handle of TPM\_NV\_INDEX\_LOCK.

### !530 **End of informative comment**

- !531 1. The TPM MUST NOT enforce the NV authorizations (auth values, PCR etc.) prior to the  
!532 execution of TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace with an index of TPM\_NV\_INDEX\_LOCK
  - !533 a. While the TPM is not enforcing NV authorizations, the TPM SHALL allow the use of  
!534 TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace in any operational state (disabled, deactivated)

## :535 29. Delegation Model

### :536 **Start of informative comment**

:537 The TPM Owner is an entity with a single “super user” privilege to control TPM operation.  
:538 Thus if any aspect of a TPM requires management, the TPM Owner must perform that task  
:539 himself or reveal his privilege information to another entity. This other entity thereby  
:540 obtains the privilege to operate all TPM controls, not just those intended by the Owner.  
:541 Therefore the Owner often must have greater trust in the other entity than is strictly  
:542 necessary to perform an arbitrary task.

:543 This delegation model addresses this issue by allowing delegation of individual TPM Owner  
:544 privileges (the right to use individual Owner authorized TPM commands) to individual  
:545 entities, which may be trusted processes.

:546 Basic requirements:

:547 **Consumer user does not need to enter or remember a TPM Owner password.** This is an  
:548 ease of use and security issue. Not remembering the password may lead to bad security  
:549 practices, increased tech support calls and lost data.

:550 **Role based administration and separation of duty.** It should be possible to delegate just  
:551 enough Owner privileges to perform some administration task or carry out some duty,  
:552 without delegating all Owner privileges.

:553 **TPM should support multiple trusted processes.** When a platform has the ability to load  
:554 and execute multiple trusted processes then the TPM should be able to participate in the  
:555 protection of secrets and proper management of the processes and their secrets. In fact, the  
:556 TPM most likely is the root of storage for these values. The TPM should enable the proper  
:557 management, protection and distribution of values held for the various trusted processes  
:558 that reside on the same platform.

:559 **Trusted processes may require restrictions.** A fundamental security tenet is the principle  
:560 of least privilege, that is, to limit process functionality to only the functions necessary to  
:561 accomplish the task. This delegation model provides a building block that allows a system  
:562 designer to create single purpose processes and then ensure that the process only has  
:563 access to the functions that it requires to complete the task.

:564 **Maintain the current authorization structure and protocols.** There is no desire to  
:565 remove the current TPM Owner and the protocols that authorize and manage the TPM  
:566 Owner. The capabilities are a delegation of TPM Owner responsibilities. The delegation  
:567 allows the TPM Owner to delegate some or all of the actions that a TPM Owner can perform.  
:568 The TPM Owner has complete control as to when and if the capability delegation is in use.

### :569 **End of informative comment**

## :570 29.1 Table Requirements

### :571 **Start of informative comment**

:572 **No ocean front property in table** – We want the table to be virtually unlimited in size.  
:573 While we need some storage, we do not want to pick just one number and have that be the  
:574 min and max. This drives the need for the ability to save, off the TPM, delegation elements.

:575 **Revoking a delegation, does not affect other** delegations – The TPM Owner may, at any  
:576 time, determine that a delegation is no longer appropriate. The TPM Owner needs to be able

to ensure the revocation of all delegations in the same family. The TPM Owner also wants to ensure that revocation done in one family does not affect any other family of delegations.

**Table seeded by OEM** – The OEM should do the seeding of the table during manufacturing. This allows the OEM to ship the platform and make it easy for the platform owner to startup the first time. The definition of manufacturing in this context includes any time prior to or including the time the user first turns on the platform.

**Table not tied to a TPM owner** – The table is not tied to the existence of a TPM owner. This facilitates the seeding of the table by the OEM.

**External delegations need authorization and assurance of revocation** – When a delegation is held external to the TPM, the TPM must ensure authorization of the delegation when loading the delegation. Upon revocation of a family or other family changes the TPM must ensure that prior valid delegations are not successfully loaded.

**90% case, no need for external store** – The normal case should be that the platform does not need to worry about having external delegations. This drives the need for some NV storage to hold a minimum number of table rows.

**End of informative comment**

## 29.2 How this works

**Start of informative comment**

The existing TPM owner authorization model is that certain TPM commands require the authorization of the TPM Owner to operate. The authorization value is the TPM Owners token. Using the token to authorize the command is proof of TPM Ownership. There is only one token and knowledge of this token allows all operations that require proof of TPM Ownership.

This extension allows the TPM Owner to create a new AuthData value and to delegate some of the TPM Ownership rights to the new AuthData value.

The use model of the delegation is to create an authorization session (DSAP) using the delegated AuthData value instead of the TPM Owner token. This allows delegation to work without change to any current command.

The intent is to permit delegation of selected Owner privileges to selected entities, be they local or remote, separate from the current software environment or integrated into the current software environment. Thus Owner privileges may be delegated to entities on other platforms, to entities (trusted processes) that are part of the normal software environment on the Owner's platform, or to a minimalist software environment on the Owner's platform (created by booting from a CDROM, or special disk partition), for example.

Privileges may be delegated to a particular entity via definition of a particular process on the Owner's platform (by dictating PCR values), and/or by stipulating a particular AuthData value. The resultant TPM\_DELEGATE\_OWNER\_BLOB and any AuthData value must be passed by the Owner to the chosen entity.

Delegation to an external entity (not on the Owner's platform) probably requires an AuthData value and a NULL PCR selection. (But the AuthData value might be sealed to a desired set of PCRs in that remote platform.)

:618 Delegation to a trusted process provided by the local OS requires a PCR that indicates the  
:619 trusted process. The authorization token should be a fixed value (any well known value),  
:620 since the OS has no means to safely store the authorization token without sealing that  
:621 token to the PCR that indicates the trusted process. It is suggested that the value  
:622 0x111...111 be used.

:623 Delegation to a specially booted entity requires either a PCR or an authorization token, and  
:624 preferably both, to recognize both the process and the fact that the Owner wishes that  
:625 process to execute.

:626 The central delegation data structure is a set of tables. These tables indicate the command  
:627 ordinals delegated by the TPM Owner to a particular defined environment. The tables allow  
:628 the distinction of delegations belonging to different environments.

:629 The TPM is capable of storing internally a few table elements to enable the passing of the  
:630 delegation information from an entity that has no access to memory or storage of the  
:631 defined environment.

:632 The number of delegations that the tables can hold is a dynamic number with the  
:633 possibility of adding or deleting entries at any time. As the total number is dynamic, and  
:634 possibly large, the TPM provides a mechanism to cache the delegations. The cache of a  
:635 delegation must include integrity and confidentiality. The term for the encrypted cached  
:636 entity is blob. The blob contains a counter (verificationCount) validated when the TPM loads  
:637 the blob.

:638 An Owner uses the counter mechanism to prevent the use of undesirable blobs; they  
:639 increment verificationCount inside the TPM and insert the current value of  
:640 verificationCount into selected table elements, including temporarily loaded blobs. (This is  
:641 the reason why a TPM must still load a blob that has an incorrect verificationCount.) An  
:642 Owner can verify the delegation state of his platform (immediately after updating  
:643 verificationCount) by keeping copies of the elements that have just been given the current  
:644 value of verificationCount, signing those copies, and sending them to a third party.

:645 Verification probably requires interaction with a third party because acceptable table  
:646 profiles will change with time and the most important reason for verification is suspicion of  
:647 the state of a TOS in a platform. Such suspicion implies that the verification check must be  
:648 done by a trusted security monitor (perhaps separate trusted software on another platform  
:649 or separate trusted software on CDROM, for example). The signature sent to the third party  
:650 must include a freshness value, to prevent replay attacks, and the security monitor must  
:651 verify that a response from the third party includes that freshness value. In situations  
:652 where the highest confidence is required, the third party could provide the response by an  
:653 out-of-band mechanism, such as an automated telephone service with spoken confirmation  
:654 of acceptability of platform state and freshness value.

:655 A challenger can verify an entire family using a single transport session with logging, that  
:656 increments the verification count, updates the verification count in selected blobs, reads the  
:657 tables and obtains a single transport session signature over all of the blobs in a family.

:658 If no Owner is installed, the delegation mechanisms are inoperative and third party  
:659 verification of the tables is impossible, but tables can still be administered and corrected.  
:660 (See later for more details.)

:661 To perform an operation using the delegation the entity establishes an authorization session  
:662 and uses the delegated AuthData value for all HMAC calculations. The TPM validates the  
:663 AuthData value, and in the case of defined environments checks the PCR values. If the

validation is successful, the TPM then validates that the delegation allows the intended operation.

There can be at least two delegation rows stored in non-volatile storage inside a TPM, and these may be changed using Owner privilege or delegated Owner privilege. Each delegation table row is a member of a family, and there can be at least eight family rows stored in non-volatile storage inside a TPM. An entity belonging to one family can be delegated the privilege to create a new family and edit the rows in its own family, but no other family.

In addition to tying together delegations, the family concept and the family table also provides the mechanism for validation and revocation of exported delegate table rows, as well as the mechanism for the platform user to perform validation of all delegations in a family.

**End of informative comment**

## 29.3 Family Table

**Start of informative comment**

The family table has three main purposes.

1 - To provide for the grouping of rows in the TPM\_DELEGATE\_TABLE; entities identified in delegate table rows as belonging to the same family can edit information in the other delegate table rows with the same family ID. This allows a family to manage itself and provides an easier mechanism during upgrades.

2 - To provide the validation and revocation mechanism for exported TPM\_DELEGATE\_ROWS and those stored on the TPM in the delegation table

3 - To provide the ability to perform validation of all delegations in a family

The family table must have eight rows, and may have more. The maximum number of rows is TPM vendor-defined and is available using the TPM\_GetCapability command.

As the family table has a limited number of rows, there is the possibility that this number could be insufficient. However, the ability to create a virtual amount of rows, like done for the TPM\_DELEGATE\_TABLE would create the need to have all of the validation and revocation mechanisms that the family table provides for the delegate table. This could become a recursive process, so for this version of the specification, the recursion stops at the family table.

The family table contains four pieces of information: the family ID, the family label, the family verification count, and the family flags.

The family ID is a 32-bit value that provides a sequence number of the families in use.

The family label is a one-byte field that family table manager software would use to help identify the information associated with the family. Software must be able to map the numeric value associated with each family to the ASCII-string family name displayable in the user interface.

The family verification count is a 32-bit sequence number that identifies the last outside verification and attestation of the family information.

Initialization of the family table occurs by using the TPM\_Delegate\_Manage command with the TPM\_FAMILY\_CREATE option.

‡705 The verificationCount parameter enables a TPM to check that all rows of a family in the  
‡706 delegate table are approved (by an external verification process), even if rows have been  
‡707 stored off-TPM.

‡708 The family flags allow the use and administration of the family table row, and its associated  
‡709 delegate table rows.

#### ‡710 **Row contents**

‡711 Family ID – 32-bits

‡712 Row label – One byte

‡713 Family verification count – 32-bits

‡714 Family enable/disable use/admin flags – 32-bits

#### ‡715 **End of informative comment**

## ‡716 **29.4 Delegate Table**

### ‡717 **Start of informative comment**

‡718 The delegate table has three main purposes, from the point of view of the TPM. This table  
‡719 holds:

‡720 The list of ordinals allowable for use by the delegate

‡721 The identity of a process that can use the ordinal list

‡722 The AuthData value to use the ordinal list

‡723 The delegate table has a minimum of two (2) rows; the maximum number of rows is TPM  
‡724 vendor-defined and is available using the TPM\_GetCapability command. Each row  
‡725 represents a delegation and, optionally, an assignment of that delegation to an identified  
‡726 trusted process.

‡727 The non-volatile delegate rows permit an entity to pass delegation rows to a software  
‡728 environment without regard to shared memory between the entity and the software  
‡729 environment. The size of the delegate table does not restrict the number of delegations  
‡730 because TPM\_Delegate\_CreateOwnerDelegation can create blobs for use in a DSAP session,  
‡731 bypassing the delegate table.

‡732 The TPM Owner controls the tables that control the delegations, but (recursively) the TPM  
‡733 Owner can delegate the management of the tables to delegated entities. Entities belonging  
‡734 to a particular group (family) of delegation processes may edit delegate table entries that  
‡735 belong to that family.

‡736 After creation of a delegation entry there is no restriction on the use of the delegation in a  
‡737 properly authorized session. The TPM Owner has properly authorized the creation of the  
‡738 delegation so the use of the delegation occurs whenever the delegate wishes to use it.

‡739 The rows of the delegate table held in non-volatile storage are only changeable under TPM  
‡740 Owner authorization.

‡741 The delegate table contains six pieces of information: PCR information, the AuthData value  
‡742 for the delegated capabilities, the delegation label, the family ID, the verification count, and  
‡743 a profile of the capabilities that are delegated to the trusted process identified by the PCR  
‡744 information.

!745 **Row Elements**

!746 ASCII label – Label that provides information regarding the row. This is not a sensitive item.

!747 Family ID – The family that the delegation belongs to; this is not a sensitive item.

!748 Verification count – Specifies the version, or generation, of this row; version validity  
!749 information is in the family table. This is not a sensitive value.

!750 Delegated capabilities – The capabilities granted, by the TPM Owner, to the identified  
!751 process. This is not a sensitive item.

!752 **Authorization and Identity**

!753 The creator of the delegation sets the AuthData value and the PCR selection. The creator is  
!754 responsible for the protection and dissemination of the AuthData value. This is a sensitive  
!755 value.

!756 **End of informative comment**

!757 1. The TPM\_DELEGATE\_TABLE MUST have at least two (2) rows; the maximum number of  
!758 table rows is TPM-vendor defined and MUST be reported in response to a  
!759 TPM\_GetCapability command

!760 2. The AuthData value and the PCR selection must be set by the creator of the delegation

!761 **29.5 Delegation Administration Control**

!762 **Start of informative comment**

!763 The delegate tables (both family and delegation) present some control problems. The tables  
!764 must be initialized by the platform OEM, administered and controlled by the TPM Owner,  
!765 and reset on changes of TPM Ownership. To provide this level of control there are three  
!766 phases of administration with different functions available in the phases.

!767 The three phases of table administration are; manufacturing (P1), no-owner (P2) and owner  
!768 present (P3). These three phases allow different types of administration of the delegation  
!769 tables.

!770 **Manufacturing (P1)**

!771 A more accurate definition of this phase is open, un-initialized and un-owned. It occurs  
!772 after TPM manufacturing and as a result of TPM\_OwnerClear or TPM\_ForceClear.

!773 In P1 TPM\_Delegate\_Manage can initialize and manage non-volatile family rows in the TPM.  
!774 TPM\_Delegate\_LoadOwnerDelegation can load non-volatile delegation rows in the TPM.

!775 Attacks that attempt to burnout the TPM's NV storage are frustrated by the NV store's own  
!776 limits on the number of writes when no Owner is installed.

!777 **No-Owner (P2)**

!778 This phase occurs after the platform has been properly setup. The setup can occur in the  
!779 platform manufacturing flow, during the first boot of the platform or at any time when the  
!780 platform owner wants to lock the table settings down. There is no TPM Owner at this time.

!781 TPM\_Delegate\_Manage locks both the family and delegation rows. This lock can be opened  
!782 only by the Owner (after the Owner has been installed, obviously) or by the act of removing

the Owner (even if no Owner is installed). Thus locked tables can be unlocked by asserting Physical Presence and executing TPM\_ForceClear, without having to install an Owner.

In P2, the relevant TPM\_Delegate\_xxx commands all return the error TPM\_DELEGATE\_LOCKED. This is not an issue as there is no TPM Owner to delegate commands, so the inability to change the tables or create delegations does not affect the use of the TPM.

### **Owned (P3)**

In this phase, the TPM has a TPM Owner and the TPM Owner manages the table as the Owner sees fit. This phase continues until the removal of the TPM Owner.

Moving from P2 to P3 is automatic upon establishment of a TPM Owner. Removal of the TPM Owner automatically moves back to P1.

The TPM Owner always has the ability to administer any table. The TPM Owner may delegate the ability to manipulate a single family or all families. Such delegations are operative only if delegations are enabled.

### **End of informative comment**

1. When DelegateAdminLock is TRUE the TPM MUST disallow any changes to the delegate tables
2. With a TPM Owner installed, the TPM Owner MUST authorize all delegate table changes

## **29.5.1 Control in Phase 1**

### **Start of informative comment**

The TPM starts life in P1. The TPM has no owner and the tables are empty. It is desirable for the OEM to initialize the tables to allow delegation to start immediately after the Owner decides to enable delegation. As the setup may require changes and validation, a simple mechanism of writing to the area once is not a valid option.

TPM\_Delegate\_Manage and TPM\_Delegate\_LoadOwnerDelegation allow the OEM to fill the table, read the public parts of the table, perform reboots, reset the table and when finally satisfied as to the state of the platform, lock the table.

Alternatively, the OEM can leave the tables NULL and turn off table administration leaving the TPM in an unloaded state waiting for the eventual TPM Owner to fill the tables, as they need.

Flow to load tables

Default values of DelegateAdminLock are set either during manufacturing or are the result of TPM\_OwnerClear or TPM\_ForceClear.

TPM\_Delegate\_Manage verifies that DelegateAdminLock is FALSE and that there is no TPM Owner. The command will therefore load or manipulate the family tables as specified in the command.

TPM\_Delegate\_LoadOwnerDelegation verifies that DelegateAdminLock is FALSE and no TPM owner is present. The command loads the delegate information specified in the command.

### **End of informative comment**

## 822 **29.5.2 Control in Phase 2**

### 823 **Start of informative comment**

824 In phase 2, no changes are possible to the delegate tables. The platform owner must install  
825 a TPM Owner and then manage the tables, or use TPM\_ForceClear to revert to phase 1.

### 826 **End of informative comment**

## 827 **29.5.3 Control in Phase 3**

### 828 **Start of informative comment**

829 The TPM\_DELEGATE\_TABLE requires commands that manage the table. These commands  
830 include filling the table, turning use of the table on or off, turning administration of the  
831 table on or off, and using the table.

832 The commands are:

833 **TPM\_Delegate\_Manage** - Manages the family table on a row-by-row basis: creates a new  
834 family, enables/disables use of a family table row and delegate table rows that share the  
835 same family ID, enables/disables administration of a family's rows in both the family table  
836 and the delegate table, and invalidates an existing family.

837 **TPM\_Delegate\_CreateOwnerDelegation** increments the family verification count (if  
838 desired) and delegates the Owner's privilege to use a set of command ordinals, by creating a  
839 blob. Such blobs can be used as input data for TPM\_DSAP or  
840 TPM\_Delegate\_LoadOwnerDelegation. Incrementing the verification count and creating a  
841 delegation must be an atomic operation. Otherwise no delegations are operative after  
842 incrementing the verification count.

843 **TPM\_Delegate\_LoadOwnerDelegation** loads a delegate blob into a non-volatile delegate  
844 table row, inside the TPM.

845 **TPM\_Delegate\_ReadTable** is used to read from the TPM the public contents of the family  
846 and delegate tables that are stored on the TPM.

847 **TPM\_Delegate\_UpdateVerification** sets the verificationCount in an entity (a blob or a  
848 delegation row) to the current family value, in order that the delegations represented by that  
849 entity will continue to be accepted by the TPM.

850 **TPM\_Delegate\_VerifyDelegation** loads a delegate blob into the TPM, and returns success  
851 or failure, depending on whether the blob is currently valid.

852 **TPM\_DSAP** - opens a deferred authorization session, using either an input blob (created by  
853 TPM\_Delegate\_CreateOwnerDelegation) or a cached blob (loaded by  
854 TPM\_Delegate\_LoadOwnerDelegation into one of the TPM's non-volatile delegation rows).

### 855 **End of informative comment**

## 856 **29.6 Family Verification**

### 857 **Start of informative comment**

858 The platform user may wish to have confirmation that the delegations in use provide a  
859 coherent set of delegations. This process would require some evaluation of the processes  
860 granted delegations. To assist in this confirmation the TPM provides a mechanism to group

:861 all delegations of a family into a signed blob. The signed blob allows the verification agent to  
:862 look at the delegations, the processes involved and make an assessment as the validity of  
:863 the delegations. The third party then sends back to the platform owner the results of the  
:864 assessment.

:865 To perform the creation of the signed blob the platform owner needs the ability to group all  
:866 of the delegations of a single family into a transport session. The platform owner also wants  
:867 an assurance that no management of the table is possible during the verification.

:868 This verification does not prove to a third party that the platform owner is not cheating.  
:869 There is nothing to prevent the platform owner from performing the validation and then  
:870 adding an additional delegation to the family.

:871 Here is one example protocol that retrieves the information necessary to validate the rows  
:872 belonging to a particular family. Note that the local method of executing the protocol must  
:873 prevent a man-in-the-middle attack using the nonce supplied by the user.

:874 The TPM Owner can increment the family verification count or use the current family  
:875 verification count. Using the current family verification count carries the risk that  
:876 unexamined delegation blobs permit undesirable delegations. Using an incremented  
:877 verification count eliminates that risk. The entity gathering the verification data requires  
:878 Owner authorization or access to a delegation that grants access to transport session  
:879 commands, plus other commands depending on whether verificationCount is to be  
:880 incremented. This delegation could be a trusted process that can use the delegations  
:881 because of its PCR measurements, a remote entity that can use the delegations because the  
:882 Owner has sent it a TPM\_DELEGATE\_OWNER\_BLOB and AuthData value, or the host  
:883 platform booted from a CDROM that can use the delegations because of its PCR  
:884 measurements, and TPM\_DELEGATE\_OWNER\_BLOB and AuthData value submitted by the  
:885 Owner, for example.

:886 Verification using the current verificationCount

:887 The gathering entity requires access to a delegation that grants access to at least the  
:888 ordinals to perform a transport session, plus TPM\_Delegate\_ReadTable and  
:889 TPM\_Delegate\_VerifyDelegation.

:890 The TPM Owner creates a transport session with the “no other activity” attribute set. This  
:891 ensures notification if other operations occur on the TPM during the validation process. (If  
:892 other operations do occur, the validation processes may have been subverted.) All  
:893 subsequent commands listed are performed using the transport session.

:894 TPM\_Delegate\_ReadTable displays all public values (including the permissions and PCR  
:895 values) in the TPM.

:896 TPM\_Delegate\_VerifyDelegation loads each cached blob, with all public values (including the  
:897 permissions and PCR values) in plain text.

:898 After verifying all blobs, TPM\_ReleaseTransportSigned signs the list of transactions.

:899 The gathering entity sends the log of the transport session plus any supporting information  
:900 to the validation entity, which evaluates the signed transport session log and informs the  
:901 platform owner of the result of the evaluation. This could be an out-of-band process.

:902 Verification using an incremented verificationCount

:903 The gathering entity requires Owner authorization or access to a delegation that grants  
:904 access to at least the ordinals to perform a transport session, plus

:905 TPM\_Delegate\_CreateOwnerDelegation, TPM\_Delegate\_ReadTable, and  
:906 TPM\_Delegate\_UpdateVerification.

:907 The TPM Owner creates a transport session with the “no other activity” attribute set.

:908 To increment the count the TPM Owner (or a delegate) must use  
:909 TPM\_Delegate\_CreateOwnerDelegation with increment == TRUE. That blob permits creation  
:910 of new delegations or approval of existing tables and blobs. That delegation must set the  
:911 PCRs of the desired (local) process and the desired AuthData value of the process. As noted  
:912 previously, AuthData values should be a fixed value if the gathering entity is a trusted  
:913 process that is part of the normal software environment.

:914 If new delegations are to be created, TPM\_Delegate\_CreateOwnerDelegation must be used  
:915 with increment == FALSE.

:916 If existing blobs and delegation rows are to be reapproved,  
:917 TPM\_Delegate\_UpdateVerification must be used to install the new value of verificationCount  
:918 into those existing blobs and non-volatile rows. This exposes the blobs’ public information  
:919 (including the permissions and PCR values) in plain text to the transport session.

:920 TPM\_Delegate\_ReadTable then exposes all public values (including the permissions and  
:921 PCR values) of tables to the transport session.

:922 Again, after verifying all blobs, TPM\_ReleaseTransportSigned signs the list of transactions.

:923 **End of informative comment**

## :924 **29.7 Use of commands for different states of TPM**

:925 **Start of informative comment**

:926 Use the ordinal table to determine when the various commands are available for use

:927 **End of informative comment**

## :928 **29.8 Delegation Authorization Values**

:929 **Start of informative comment**

:930 This section describes why, when a PCR selection is set, the AuthData value may be a fixed  
:931 value, and, when the PCR selection is null, the delegation creator must select an AuthData  
:932 value.

:933 A PCR value is an indication of a particular (software) environment in the local platform.  
:934 Either that PCR value indicates a trusted process or not. If the trusted process is to execute  
:935 automatically, there is no point in allocating a meaningful AuthData value. (The only way  
:936 the trusted process could store the AuthData value is to seal it to the process’s PCR values,  
:937 but the delegation mechanism is already checking the process’s PCR values.) If execution of  
:938 the trusted process is dependent upon the wishes of another entity (such as the Owner), the  
:939 AuthData value should be a meaningful (private) value known only to the TPM, the Owner,  
:940 and that other entity. Otherwise the AuthData value should be a fixed, well known, value.

:941 If the delegation is to be controlled from a remote platform, these simple delegation  
:942 mechanisms provide no means for the platform to verify the PCRs of that remote platform,  
:943 and hence access to the delegation must be based solely upon knowledge of the AuthData  
:944 value.

**:945 End of informative comment****:946 29.8.1 Using the authorization value****:947 Start of informative comment**

:948 To use a delegation the TPM will enforce any PCR selection on use. The use definition is any  
:949 command that uses the delegation authorization value to take the place of the TPM Owner  
:950 authorization.

**:951 PCR Selection defined**

:952 In this case, the delegation has a PCR selection structure defined. Each time the TPM uses  
:953 the delegation authorization value instead of the TPM Owner value the TPM would validate  
:954 that the current PCR settings match the settings held in the delegation structure. The PCR  
:955 selection includes the definition of localities and checks of locality occur with the checking  
:956 of the PCR values. The TPM enforces use of the correct authorization value, which may or  
:957 may not be a meaningful (private) value.

**:958 PCR selection NULL**

:959 In this case, the delegation has no PCR selection structure defined. The TPM does not  
:960 enforce any particular environment before using the authorization value. Mere knowledge of  
:961 the value is sufficient.

**:962 End of informative comment****:963 29.9 DSAP description****:964 Start of informative comment**

:965 The DSAP opens a deferred auth session, using either a TPM\_DELEGATE\_BLOB as input  
:966 parameter or a reference to the TPM\_DELEGATE\_TABLE\_ROW, stored inside the TPM. The  
:967 DSAP command creates an ephemeral secret to authenticate a session. The purpose of this  
:968 section is to illustrate the delegation of user keys or TPM Owner authorization by creating  
:969 and using a DSAP session without regard to a specific command.

:970 A key defined for a certain usage (e.g. TPM\_KEY\_IDENTITY) can be applied to different  
:971 functions within the use model (e.g. TPM\_Quote or TPM\_CertifyKey). If an entity knows the  
:972 AuthData for the key (key.usageAuth) it can perform all the functions, allowed for that use  
:973 model of that particular key. This entity is also defined as delegation creation entity, since it  
:974 can initiate the delegation process. Assume that a restricted usage entity should only be  
:975 allowed to execute a subset or a single functions denoted as TPM\_Example, within the  
:976 specific use model of a key. (e.g. Allow the usage of a TPM\_IDENTITY\_KEY only for  
:977 Certifying Keys, but no other function). This use model points to the selection of the DSAP  
:978 as the authorization protocol to execute the TPM\_Example command.

:979 To perform this scenario the delegation creation entity must know the AuthData for the key  
:980 (key.usageAuth). It then has to initiate the delegation by creating a  
:981 TPM\_DELEGATE\_KEY\_BLOB via the TPM\_Delegate\_CreateKeyDelegation command. As a  
:982 next step the delegation creation entity has to pass the TPM\_DELEGATE\_KEY\_BLOB and  
:983 the delegation AuthData (TPM\_DELEGATE\_SENSITIVE.authValue) to the restricted usage  
:984 entity. The specification offers the TPM\_DelTable\_ReadAuth mechanism to perform this  
:985 function. Other mechanisms may be used.

:986 The restricted usage entity can now start an TPM\_DSAP session by using the  
:987 TPM\_DELEGATE\_KEY\_BLOB as input.

:988 For the TPM\_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to  
:989 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters  
:990 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

:991 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,  
:992 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,  
:993 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:  
:994 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the  
:995 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

:996 In addition to the two even nonces generated by the TPM (authLastNonceEven and  
:997 nonceEven) that are used for TPM\_OIAP, there is a third, labeled nonceEvenOSAP that is  
:998 used to generate the shared secret. For every even nonce, there is also an odd nonce  
:999 generated by the system.

.000

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_DSAP	TPM_DSAP keyHandle nonceOddOSAP entityType entityValue	→	Decrypt sensitiveArea of entityValue If entityValue==TPM_ET_DEL_BLOB verify the integrity of the blob, and if a TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB is input verify that KeyHandle and entityValue match Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(sensitiveArea.authValue., nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save keyHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle and permissions
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(sensitiveArea.authValue, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Check if command ordinal of TPM_Example is allowed in permissions. If not return TPM_DISABLED_CMD Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC( sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

.001

.002

.003 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session  
.004 to operate on the same key. For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same  
.005 ordinal is to be used (TPM\_Example). To re-use the previous session, the  
.006 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

.007 The following table shows the command execution, the parameters created and the wire  
.008 formats of all of the information.

.009 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the  
.010 output parameters from the first execution of TPM\_Example.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC( sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

.011

.012 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions or terminate it  
.013 in the ways that have been described above in TPM\_OIAP. Note that termination of the  
.014 DSAP session causes the TPM to destroy the shared secret.

.015 **End of informative comment**

- .016 1. The DSAP session MUST enforce any PCR selection on use. The use definition is any  
.017 command that uses the delegation authorization value to take the place of the TPM  
.018 Owner authorization.

## .019 **30. Physical Presence**

### .020 **Start of informative comment**

.021 Physical presence is a signal from the platform to the TPM that indicates the operator  
.022 manipulated the hardware of the platform. Manipulation would include depressing a  
.023 switch, setting a jumper, depressing a key on the keyboard or some other such action.

.024 TCG does not specify an implementation technique. The guideline is the physical presence  
.025 technique should make it difficult or impossible for rogue software to assert the physical  
.026 presence signal.

.027 A PC-specific physical presence mechanism might be an electrical connection from a switch,  
.028 or a program that loads during power on self-test.

### .029 **End of informative comment**

.030 The TPM MUST support a signal from the platform for the assertion of physical presence. A  
.031 TCG platform specific specification MAY specify what mechanisms assert the physical  
.032 presence signal.

.033 The platform manufacturer MUST provide for the physical presence assertion by some  
.034 physical mechanism.

## .035 **30.1 Use of Physical Presence**

### .036 **Start of informative comment**

.037 For control purposes there are numerous commands on the TPM that require TPM Owner  
.038 authorization. Included in this group of commands are those that turn the TPM on or off  
.039 and those that define the operating modes of the TPM. The TPM Owner always has complete  
.040 control of the TPM. What happens in two conditions: there is no TPM Owner or the TPM  
.041 Owner forgets the TPM Owner AuthData value. Physical presence allows for an  
.042 authorization to change the state in these two conditions.

### .043 **No TPM Owner**

.044 This state occurs when the TPM ships from manufacturing (it can occur at other times  
.045 also). There is no TPM Owner. It is imperative to protect the TPM from remote software  
.046 processes that would attempt to gain control of the TPM. To indicate to the TPM that the  
.047 TPM operating state can change (allow for the creation of the TPM Owner) the human  
.048 asserts physical presence. The physical presence assertion then indicates to the TPM that  
.049 changing the operating state of the TPM is authorized.

### .050 **Lost TPM Owner authorization**

.051 In the case of lost, or forgotten, authorization there is a TPM Owner but no way to manage  
.052 the TPM. If the TPM will only operate with the TPM Owner authorization then the TPM is no  
.053 longer controllable. Here the operator of the machine asserts physical presence and  
.054 removes the current TPM Owner. The assumption is that the operator will then immediately  
.055 take ownership of the TPM and insert a new TPM Owner AuthData value.

### .056 **Operator disabling**

.057 Another use of physical presence is to indicate that the operator wants to disable the use of  
.058 the TPM. This allows the operator to temporarily turn off the TPM but not change the  
.059 permanent operating mode of the TPM as set by the TPM Owner.

.060 **End of informative comment**

**31. TPM Internal Asymmetric Encryption****Start of Informative comment**

For asymmetric encryption schemes, the TPM is not required to perform the blocking of information where that information cannot be encrypted in a single cryptographic operation. The schemes TPM\_ES\_RSAESOAEP\_SHA1\_MGF1 and TPM\_ES\_RSAESPKCSV15 allow only single block encryption. When using these schemes, the caller to the TPM must perform any blocking and unblocking outside the TPM. It is the responsibility of the caller to ensure that multiple blocks are properly protected using a chaining mechanism.

Note that there are inherent dangers associated with splitting information so that it can be encrypted in multiple blocks with an asymmetric key, and then chaining together these blocks together. For example, if an integrity check mechanism is not used, an attacker can encrypt his own data using the public key, and substitute this rogue block for one of the original blocks in the message, thus forcing the TPM to replace part of the message upon decryption.

There is also a more subtle attack to discover the data encrypted in low-entropy blocks. The attacker makes a guess at the plaintext data, encrypts it, and substitutes the encrypted guess for the original block. When the TPM decrypts the complete message, a successful decryption will indicate that his guess was correct.

There are a number of solutions which could be considered for this problem – One such solution for TPMs supporting symmetric encryption is specified in PKCS#7, section 10, and involves using the public key to encrypt a symmetric key, then using that symmetric key to encrypt the long message.

For TPMs without symmetric encryption capabilities, an alternative solution may be to add random padding to each message block, thus increasing the block's entropy.

**End of informative comment**

1. For a TPM\_UNBIND command where the parent key has pubKey.algorithmId equal to TPM\_ALG\_RSA and pubKey.encScheme set to TPM\_ES\_RSAESPKCSV15 the TPM SHALL NOT expect a PAYLOAD\_TYPE structure to prepend the decrypted data.
2. The TPM MUST perform the encryption or decryption in accordance with the specification of the encryption scheme, as described below.
3. When a null terminated string is included in a calculation, the terminating null SHALL NOT be included in the calculation.

**31.1.1 TPM\_ES\_RSAESOAEP\_SHA1\_MGF1**

1. The encryption and decryption MUST be performed using the scheme RSA\_ES\_OAEP defined in [PKCS #1v2.0: 7.1] using SHA1 as the hash algorithm for the encoding operation.
2. Encryption
  - a. The OAEP encoding P parameter MUST be the 4 character string “TCPA”.
  - b. While the TCG now controls this specification the string value will NOT change to allow for interoperability and backward compatibility with TCPA 1.1 TPM's

- .101 c. If there is an error with the encryption, the TPM must return the error  
.102 TPM\_ENCRYPT\_ERROR.
- .103 3. Decryption
- .104 a. The OAEP decoding P parameter MUST be the 4 character string “TCPA”.
- .105 b. While the TCG now controls this specification the string value will NOT change to  
.106 allow for interoperability and backward compatibility with TCG 1.1 TPM’s
- .107 c. If there is an error with the decryption, the TPM must return the error  
.108 TPM\_DECRYPT\_ERROR.

### .109 **31.1.2 TPM\_ES\_RSAESPKCSV15**

- .110 1. The encryption MUST be performed using the scheme RSA\_ES\_PKCSV15 defined in  
.111 [PKCS #1v2.0: 7.2].
- .112 2. Encryption
- .113 a. If there is an error with the encryption, return the error TPM\_ENCRYPT\_ERROR.
- .114 3. Decryption
- .115 a. If there is an error with the decryption, return the error TPM\_DECRYPT\_ERROR.

### .116 **31.1.3 TPM\_ES\_SYM\_CNT**

#### .117 **Start of informative comment**

.118 This defines an encryption mode in use with symmetric algorithms. The actual definition is  
.119 at

.120 <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-38a/sp800-38a.pdf>

.121 The underlying symmetric algorithm may be AES128, AES192, AES256 or 3DES. The  
.122 definition for these algorithms is in the NIST document Appendix E.

#### .123 **End of informative comment**

- .124 1. Given a current counter value, the next counter value is obtained by treating the lower  
.125 32 bits of the current counter value as an unsigned 32-bit integer  $x$ , then replacing the  
.126 lower 32 bits of the current counter value with the bits of the incremented integer  $(x + 1)$   
.127 mod  $2^{32}$ . This method is described in Appendix B.1 of the NIST document  
.128 (b=32).30.1.3 TPM\_ES\_SYM\_CNT

### .129 **31.1.4 TPM\_ES\_SYM\_OFB**

#### .130 **Start of informative comment**

.131 This defines an encryption mode in use with symmetric algorithms. The actual definition is  
.132 at

.133 <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-38a/sp800-38a.pdf>

.134 The underlying symmetric algorithm may be AES128, AES192, AES256 or 3DES. The  
.135 definition for these algorithms is in the NIST document Appendix E.

#### .136 **End of informative comment**

## .137 **31.2 TPM Internal Digital Signatures**

### .138 **Start of informative comment**

.139 These values indicate the approved schemes in use by the TPM to generate digital  
.140 signatures.

### .141 **End of informative comment**

.142

.143 The TPM MUST perform the signature or verification in accordance with the specification of  
.144 the signature scheme, as described below.

### .145 **31.2.1 TPM\_SS\_RSASSAPKCS1v15\_SHA1**

.146 1. The signature MUST be performed using the scheme RSASSA-PKCS1-v1.5 defined in  
.147 [PKCS #1v2.0: 8.1] using SHA1 as the hash algorithm for the encoding operation.

### .148 **31.2.2 TPM\_SS\_RSASSAPKCS1v15\_DER**

#### .149 **Start of informative comment**

.150 This signature scheme is designed to permit inclusion of DER coded information before  
.151 signing, which is inappropriate for most TPM capabilities

#### .152 **End of informative comment**

- .153 1. The signature MUST be performed using the scheme RSASSA-PKCS1-v1.5 defined in  
.154 [PKCS #1v2.0: 8.1]. The caller must properly format the area to sign using the DER  
.155 rules. The provided area maximum size is k-11 octets.
- .156 2. TPM\_Sign SHALL be the only TPM capability that is permitted to use this signature  
.157 scheme. If a capability other than TPM\_Sign is requested to use this signature scheme,  
.158 it SHALL fail with the error code TPM\_INAPPROPRIATE\_SIG

### .159 **31.2.3 TPM\_SS\_RSASSAPKCS1v15\_INFO**

#### .160 **Start of informative comment**

.161 This signature scheme is designed to permit signatures on arbitrary information but also  
.162 protect the signature mechanism from being misused.

#### .163 **End of informative comment**

- .164 1. The scheme MUST work just as TPM\_SS\_RSASSAPKCS1V15\_SHA1 except in the  
.165 TPM\_Sign command
- .166 a. In the TPM\_Sign command the scheme MUST use a properly constructed  
.167 TPM\_SIGN\_INFO structure, and hash it before signing

### .168 **31.2.4 Use of Signature Schemes**

#### .169 **Start of informative comment**

.170 The PKCS1v15\_INFO scheme is a new addition for 1.2. It causes a new functioning for 1.1  
.171 and 1.2 keys. The following details the use of the new scheme and how the TPM handles  
.172 signatures and hashing

.173 **End of informative comment**

- .174 1. For the commands (TPM\_GetAuditDigestSigned, TPM\_TickStampBlob,  
.175 TPM\_ReleaseTransportSigned):
- .176 a. The TPM MUST create a TPM\_SIGN\_INFO and sign it using the key specified and  
.177 TPM\_SS\_RSASSAPKCS1v15\_SHA1
- .178 2. For the commands (TPM\_IdentityKey, TPM\_Quote and TPM\_CertifyKey):
- .179 a. Create the structure as defined by the command and sign using  
.180 TPM\_SS\_RSASSAPKCS1v15\_SHA1 for either SHA1 or SIGN\_INFO
- .181 3. For TPM\_Sign:
- .182 a. Create the structure as defined by the command and key scheme
- .183 b. If key->sigScheme is SHA1 sign the 20 byte parameter
- .184 c. If key->sigScheme is DER, sign the DER value using  
.185 TPM\_SS\_RSASSAPKCS1v15\_DER
- .186 d. If key->sigScheme is SIGN\_INFO, sign any value using the SIGN\_INFO structure and  
.187 TPM\_SS\_RSASSAPKCS1v15\_INFO
- .188 4. When data is signed and the data comes from INSIDE the TPM, the TPM is MUST do the  
.189 hash, and prepend the DER encoding correctly before performing the padding and  
.190 private key operation.
- .191 5. When data is signed and the data comes from OUTSIDE the TPM, the software, not the  
.192 TPM, MUST do the hash.
- .193 6. When the TPM knows, or is told by implication, that the hash used is SHA-1, the TPM  
.194 MUST prepend the DER encoding correctly before performing the padding and private  
.195 key operation
- .196 7. When the TPM does not know, or told by implication, that the hash used is SHA-1, the  
.197 software, not the TPM) MUST provide the DER encoding to be prepended.
- .198 8. The TPM MUST perform the padding and private key operation in any signing operations  
.199 it does.

.200  
.201  
.202  
.203

### 32. Key Usage Table

This table summarizes the types of keys associated with a given TPM command. It is the responsibility of each command to check the key usage prior to executing the command

Name	First Key	Second Key	First Key						Second Key							
			SIGNING	STORAGE	IDENTITY	AUTHCHG	BIND	LEGACY	SIGNING	STORAGE	IDENTITY	AUTHCHG	BIND	LEGACY		
TPM_ActivateIdentity	idKey				x											
TPM_CertifyKey	certKey	inKey	x		x			x	x	x			x		x	
TPM_CertifyKey2(Note 3)	inKey	certKey	x	x	x			x	x		x					x
TPM_CertifySelfTest	key		x		x											x
TPM_ChangeAuth	parent	blob		x						2	2	2	2	2	2	
TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish	parent	ephemeral		x										x		
TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart	idKey	ephemeral			x									x		
TPM_CMK_ConvertMigration	parent			x												
TPM_CMK_CreateBlob	parent			x												
TPM_CMK_CreateKey	parent			x												
TPM_ConvertMigrationBlob	parent			x												
TPM_CreateMigrationBlob	parent	blob		x						2	2	2	2	2	2	
TPM_CreateWrapKey	parent			x												
TPM_Delegate_CreateKeyDelegation	key		x	x	x	x	x	x								
TPM_DSAP	entity		x	x	x	x	x	x								
TPM_EstablishTransport	key			x												x
TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned	certKey		x		x											x
TPM_GetAuditEventSigned	certKey		x													x
TPM_GetCapabilitySigned	key		x		x											x
TPM_GetPubKey	key		x	x	x	x	x	x								
TPM_KeyControlOwner	key		x	x	x			x	x							
TPM_LoadKey 2	parent	inKey		x						x	x	x			x	x
TPM_LoadKey	parent	inKey		x						x	x	x			x	x
TPM_MigrateKey	maKey			1												
TPM_OSAP	entity		x	x	x	x	x	x								

TPM_Quote	key	x	x	x
TPM_Quote2	key	x	x	x
TPM_Seal	key		x	
TPM_Sealx	key		x	
TPM_Sign	key	x		x
TPM_UnBind	key			x x
TPM_Unseal	parent		x	
TPM_ReleaseTransport	key	x		
TPM_TickStampBlob	key	x	x	x

:204 **Notes**

:205 1 – Key is not a storage key but TPM\_MIGRATE\_KEY

:206 2 – TPM unable to determine key type

:207 3 – The order is correct; the reason is to support a single auth version.

**33. Direct Anonymous Attestation****Start of informative comment**

TPM\_DAA\_Join and TPM\_DAA\_Sign are highly resource intensive commands. They require most of the internal TPM resources to accomplish the complete set of operations. A TPM may specify that no other commands are possible during the join or sign operations. To allow for other operations to occur the TPM does allow the TPM\_SaveContext command to save off the current join or sign operation.

Operations that occur during a join or sign result in the loss of the join or sign session in favour of the interrupting command.

**End of informative comment**

1. The TPM MUST support one concurrent TPM\_DAA\_Join or TPM\_DAA\_Sign session. The TPM MAY support additional sessions
2. The TPM MAY invalidate a join or sign session upon the receipt of any additional command other than the join/sign or TPM\_SaveContext

**33.1 TPM\_DAA\_JOIN****Start of informative comment**

TPM\_DAA\_Join creates new JOIN data. If a TPM supports only one JOIN/SIGN operation, TPM\_DAA\_Join invalidates any previous DAA attestation information inside a TPM. The JOIN phase of a DAA context requires a TPM to communicate with an issuer. TPM\_DAA\_Join outputs data to be sent to an issuing authority and receives data from that issuing authority. The operation potentially requires several seconds to complete, but is done in a series of atomic stages and TPM\_SaveContext/RestoreContext can be used to cache data off-TPM in between atomic stages.

The JOIN process is designed so a TPM will normally receive exactly the same DAA credentials from a given issuer, no matter how many times the JOIN process is executed and no matter whether the issuer changes his keys. This property is necessary because an issuer must give DAA credentials to a platform after verifying that the platform has the architecture of a trusted platform. Unless the issuer repeats the verification process, there is no justification for giving different DAA credentials to the same platform. Even after repeating the verification process, the issuer should give replacement (different) DAA credentials only when it is necessary to retire the old DAA credentials. Replacement DAA credentials erase the previous DAA history of the platform, at least as far as the DAA credentials from that issuer are concerned. Replacement might be desirable, as when a platform changes hands, for example, in order to eliminate any association via DAA between the seller and the buyer. On the other hand, replacement might be undesirable, since it enables a rogue to rejoin a community from which he has been barred. Replacement is done by submitting a different “count” value to the TPM during a JOIN process. A platform may use any value of “count” at any time, in any order, but only “counts” accepted by the issuer will elicit DAA credentials from that issuer.

The TPM is forced to verify an issuer’s public parameters before using an issuer’s public parameters. This verification provides proof that the public parameters (which include a public key) were approved by an entity that knows the private key corresponding to that public key; in other words that the JOIN has previously been approved by the issuer. This

.251 verification is necessary to prevent an attack by a rogue using a genuine issuer's public  
.252 parameters, which could reveal the secret created by the TPM using those public  
.253 parameters. Verification uses a signature (provided by the issuer) over the public  
.254 parameters.

.255 The exponent of the issuer's key is fixed at  $2^{16}+1$ , because this is the only size of exponent  
.256 that a TPM is required to support. The modulus of the issuer's public key is used to create  
.257 the pseudonym with which the TPM contacts the issuer. Hence the TPM cannot produce the  
.258 same pseudonym for different issuers (who have different keys). The pseudonym is always  
.259 created using the issuer's first key, even if the issuer changes keys, in order to produce the  
.260 property described earlier. The issuer proves to the TPM that he has the right to use that  
.261 first key to create a pseudonym by creating a chain of signatures from the first key to the  
.262 current key, and submitting those signatures to the TPM. The method has the desirable  
.263 property that only signatures and the most recent private key need be retained by the  
.264 issuer: once the latest link in the signature chain has been created, previous private keys  
.265 can be discarded.

.266 The use of atomic operations minimises the contiguous time that a TPM is busy with  
.267 TPM\_DAA\_Join and hence unavailable for other commands. JOIN can therefore be done as  
.268 a background activity without inconveniencing a user. The use of atomic operations also  
.269 minimises the peak value of TPM resources consumed by the JOIN phase.

.270 The use of atomic operations introduces a need for consistency checks, to ensure that the  
.271 same parameters are used in all atomic operations of the same JOIN process.  
.272 DAA\_tpmSpecific therefore contains a digest of the associated DAA\_issuerSettings  
.273 structure, and DAA\_session contains a digest of associated DAA\_tpmSpecific and  
.274 DAA\_joinSession structures. Each atomic operation verifies digests to ensure use of  
.275 mutually consistent sets of DAA\_issuerSettings, DAA\_tpmSpecific, DAA\_session, and  
.276 DAA\_joinSession data.

.277 JOIN operations and data structures are designed to minimise the amount of data that  
.278 must be stored on a TPM in between atomic operations, while ensuring use of mutually  
.279 consistent sets of data. Digests of public data are held in the TPM between atomic  
.280 operations, instead of the actual public data (if a digest is smaller than the actual data). In  
.281 each atomic operation, consistency checks verify that any public data loaded and used in  
.282 that operation matches the stored digest. Thus non-secret DAA\_generic\_X parameters  
.283 (loaded into the TPM only when required), are checked using digests DAA\_digest\_X  
.284 (preloaded into the TPM in the structure DAA\_issuerSettings).

.285 JOIN includes a challenge from the issuer, in order to defeat simple Denial of Service  
.286 attacks on the issuer's server by rogues pretending to be arbitrary TPMs.

.287 A first group of atomic operations generate all TPM-data that must be sent to the issuer.  
.288 The platform performs other operations (that do not need to be trusted) using the TPM-data,  
.289 and sends the resultant data to the issuer. The issuer sends values u2 and u3 back to the  
.290 TPM. A second group of atomic operations accepts this data from the issuer and completes  
.291 the protocol.

.292 The TPM outputs encrypted forms of DAA\_tpmSpecific, v0 and v1. These encrypted data are  
.293 later interpreted by the same TPM and not by any other entity, so any manufacturer-  
.294 specific wrapping can be used. It is suggested, however, that enc(DAA\_tpmSpecific) or  
.295 enc(v0) or enc(v1) data should be created by adapting a TPM\_CONTEXT\_BLOB structure.

.296 After executing TPM\_DAA\_Join, it is prudent to perform TPM\_DAA\_Sign, to verify that the  
.297 JOIN process completed correctly. A host platform may choose to verify JOIN by performing  
.298 TPM\_DAA\_Sign as both the target and the verifier (or could, of course, use an external  
.299 verifier).

.300 **End of informative comment**

## .301 **33.2 TPM\_DAA\_Sign**

.302 **Start of informative comment**

.303 TPM\_DAA\_Sign responds to a challenge and proves the attestation held by a TPM without  
.304 revealing the attestation held by that TPM. The operation is done in a series of atomic  
.305 stages to minimise the contiguous time that a TPM is busy and hence unavailable for other  
.306 commands. TPM\_SaveContext can be used to save a DAA context in between atomic stages.  
.307 This enables the response to the challenge to be done as a background activity without  
.308 inconveniencing a user, and also minimises the peak value of TPM resources consumed by  
.309 the process.

.310 The use of atomic operations introduces a need for consistency checks, to ensure that the  
.311 same parameters are used in all atomic operations of the same SIGN process.  
.312 DAA\_tpmSpecific therefore contains a digest of the associated DAA\_issuerSettings  
.313 structure, and DAA\_session contains a digest of associated DAA\_tpmSpecific structure.  
.314 Each atomic operation verifies these digests and hence ensures use of mutually consistent  
.315 sets of DAA\_issuerSettings, DAA\_tpmSpecific, and DAA\_session data.

.316 SIGN operations and data structures are designed to minimise the amount of data that  
.317 must be stored on a TPM in between atomic operations, while ensuring use of mutually  
.318 consistent sets of data. Digests of public and private data are held in the TPM between  
.319 atomic operations, instead of the actual public or private data (if a digest is smaller than the  
.320 actual data). At each atomic operation, consistency checks verify that any data loaded and  
.321 used in that operation matches the stored digest. Thus parameters DAA\_digest\_X are  
.322 digests (preloaded into the TPM in the structure DAA\_issuerSettings) of non-secret  
.323 DAA\_generic\_X parameters (loaded into the TPM only when required), for example.

.324 The design enables the use of any number of issuer DAA-data, private DAA-data, and so on.  
.325 Strictly, the design is that the \*TPM\* puts no limit on the number of sets of issuer DAA-data  
.326 or sets of private DAA-data, or restricts what set is in the TPM at any time, but supports  
.327 only one DAA-context in the TPM at any instant. Any number of DAA-contexts can, of  
.328 course, be swapped in and out of the TPM using saveContext /loadContext, so applications  
.329 do not perceive a limit on the number of DAA-contexts.

.330 TPM\_DAA\_Sign accepts a freshness challenge from the verifier and generate all TPM-data  
.331 that must be sent to the verifier. The platform performs other operations (that do not need  
.332 to be trusted) using the TPM-data, and sends the resultant data to the verifier. At one stage,  
.333 the TPM incorporates a loaded public (non-migratable) key into the protocol. This is  
.334 intended to permit the setup of a session, for any specific purpose, including doing the  
.335 same job in TPM\_ActivateIdentity as the EK.

.336 **End of informative comment**

## .337 **33.3 DAA Command summary**

.338 **Start of informative comment**

.339 The following is a conceptual summary of the operations that are necessary to setup a TPM  
.340 for DAA, execute the JOIN process, and execute the SIGN process.

.341 The summary is partitioned according to the “stages” of the actual TPM commands. Thus  
.342 the operations listed in JOIN under stage-2 briefly describe the operation of TPM\_DAA\_Join  
.343 at stage-2, for example.

.344 This summary is in place to help in the connection between the mathematical definition of  
.345 DAA and this implementation in a TPM.

.346 **End of informative comment**

### .347 **33.3.1 TPM setup**

.348 1. A TPM generates a TPM-specific secret S (160-bit) from the RNG and stores S in  
.349 nonvolatile store on the TPM. This value will never be disclosed and changed by the  
.350 TPM.

### .351 **33.3.2 JOIN**

.352 **Start of informative comment**

.353 This entire section is informative

.354 1. When the following is performed, this process does not increment the stage counter.

.355 a. TPM imports a non-secret values n0 (2048-bit).

.356 b. TPM computes a non-secret value N0 (160-bit) = H(n0).

.357 c. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret DAA\_rekey (160-bit) = H(S, H(n0)).

.358 d. TPM stores a self-consistent set of (N0, DAA\_rekey)

.359 2. The following is performed 0 or several times: (Note: If the stage mechanism is being  
.360 used, then this branch does not increment the stage counter.)

.361 a. TPM imports

.362 i. a self consistent set of (N0, DAA\_rekey)

.363 ii. a non-secret value DAA\_SEED\_KEY (2048-bit)

.364 iii. a non-secret value DEPENDENT\_SEED\_KEY (2048-bit)

.365 iv. a non-secret value SIG\_DSK (2048-bit)

.366 b. TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = H(DAA\_SEED\_KEY)

.367 c. If DIGEST != N0, TPM refuses to continue

.368 d. If DIGEST == N0, TPM verifies validity of signature SIG\_DSK on  
.369 DEPENDENT\_SEED\_KEY with key (DAA\_SEED\_KEY, e0 (= 2<sup>16</sup> + 1)) by using  
.370 TPM\_Sign\_Verify (based on PKCS#1 2.0). If check fails, TPM refuses to continue.

.371 e. TPM sets N0 = H(DEPENDENT\_SEED\_KEY)

.372 f. TPM stores a self consistent set of (N0, DAA\_JOIN)

.373 3. Stage 2

.374 a. TPM imports a set of values, including

- .375 i. a non-secret value  $n_0$  (2048-bit),
- .376 ii. a non-secret value  $R_0$  (2048-bit),
- .377 iii. a non-secret value  $R_1$  (2048-bit),
- .378 iv. a non-secret value  $S_0$  (2048-bit),
- .379 v. a non-secret value  $S_1$  (2048-bit),
- .380 vi. a non-secret value  $n$  (2048-bit),
- .381 vii. a non-secret value  $n_1$  (1024-bit),
- .382 viii. a non-secret value  $\gamma$  (2048-bit),
- .383 ix. a non-secret value  $q$  (208-bit),
- .384 x. a non-secret value COUNT (8-bit),
- .385 xi. a self consistent set of  $(N_0, \text{DAA\_rekey})$ .
- .386 xii. TPM saves them as part of a new set A.
- .387 b. TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) =  $H(n_0)$
- .388 c. If DIGEST  $\neq N_0$ , TPM refuses to continue.
- .389 d. If DIGEST ==  $N_0$ , TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) =  $H(R_0, R_1, S_0, S_1, n, n_1, \gamma, q)$
- .390 e. TPM imports a non-secret value SIG\_ISSUER\_KEY (2048-bit).
- .391 f. TPM verifies validity of signature SIG\_ISSUER\_KEY (2048-bit) on DIGEST with key  $(n_0,$
- .392  $e_0)$  by using TPM\_Sign\_Verify (based on PKCS#1 2.0). If check fails, TPM refuses to
- .393 continue.
- .394 g. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $f$  (208-bit) =  $H(\text{DAA\_rekey}, \text{COUNT},$
- .395  $0) \parallel H(\text{DAA\_rekey}, \text{COUNT}, 1) \bmod q$ .
- .396 h. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $f_0$  (104-bit) =  $f \bmod 2^{104}$ .
- .397 i. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $f_1$  (104-bit) =  $f \gg 104$ .
- .398 j. TPM save  $f, f_0$  and  $f_1$  as part of set A.
- .399 4. Stage 3
- .400 a. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $u_0$  (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- .401 b. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $u'_1$  (1104-bit) from the RNG.
- .402 c. TPM computes  $u_1$  (1024-bit) =  $u'_1 \bmod n_1$ .
- .403 d. TPM stores  $u_0$  and  $u_1$  as part of set A.
- .404 5. Stage 4
- .405 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P_1$  (2048-bit) =  $(R_0^{f_0}) \bmod n$  and stores  $P_1$  as part of
- .406 set A.
- .407 6. Stage 5
- .408 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P_2$  (2048-bit) =  $P_1 \cdot (R_1^{f_1}) \bmod n$ , stores  $P_2$  as part of
- .409 set A and erases  $P_1$  from set A.
- .410 7. Stage 6

- .411 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P3$  (2048-bit) =  $P2*(S0^{u0}) \bmod n$ , stores  $P3$  as part of  
.412 set  $A$  and erases  $P2$  from set  $A$ .
- .413 8. Stage 7
- .414 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $U$  (2048-bit) =  $P3*(S1^{u1}) \bmod n$ .
- .415 b. TPM erases  $P3$  from set  $A$
- .416 c. TPM computes and saves  $U1$  (160-bit) =  $H(U || COUNT || N0)$  as part of set  $A$ .
- .417 d. TPM exports  $U$ .
- .418 9. Stage 8
- .419 a. TPM imports  $ENC\_NE$  (2048-bit).
- .420 b. TPM decrypts  $NE$  (160-bit) from  $ENC\_NE$  (2048-bit) by using  $privEK$ :  $NE =$   
.421  $decrypt(privEK, ENC\_NE)$ .
- .422 c. TPM computes  $U2$  (160-bit) =  $H(U1 || NE)$ .
- .423 d. TPM erases  $U1$  from set  $A$ .
- .424 e. TPM exports  $U2$ .
- .425 10. Stage 9
- .426 a. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $r0$  (344-bit) from the RNG.
- .427 b. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $r1$  (344-bit) from the RNG.
- .428 c. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $r2$  (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- .429 d. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $r3$  (1264-bit) from the RNG.
- .430 e. TPM stores  $r0, r1, r2, r3$  as part of set  $A$ .
- .431 f. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P1$  (2048-bit) =  $(R0^{r0}) \bmod n$  and stores  $P1$  as part of  
.432 set  $A$ .
- .433 11. Stage 10
- .434 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P2$  (2048-bit) =  $P1*(R1^{r1}) \bmod n$ , stores  $P2$  as part of  
.435 set  $A$  and erases  $P1$  from set  $A$ .
- .436 12. Stage 11
- .437 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P3$  (2048-bit) =  $P2*(S0^{r2}) \bmod n$ , stores  $P3$  as part of  
.438 set  $A$  and erases  $P2$  from set  $A$ .
- .439 13. Stage 12
- .440 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P4$  (2048-bit) =  $P3*(S1^{r3}) \bmod n$ , stores  $P4$  as part of  
.441 set  $A$  and erases  $P3$  from set  $A$ .
- .442 b. TPM exports  $P4$ .
- .443 14. Stage 13
- .444 a. TPM imports  $w$  (2048-bit).
- .445 b. TPM computes  $w1 = w^q \bmod G$ .
- .446 c. TPM verifies if  $w1 = 1$  holds. If it doesn't hold, TPM refuses to continue.

- .447 d. If it does hold, TPM saves  $w$  as part of set A.
- .448 15.Stage 14
- .449 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $E$  (2048-bit) =  $w^f \bmod G$ .
- .450 b. TPM exports  $E$ .
- .451 16.Stage 15
- .452 a. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $r$  (208-bit) =  $r_0 + 2^{104}r_1 \bmod q$ .
- .453 b. TPM computes a non-secret value  $E_1$  (2048-bit) =  $w^r \bmod G$ .
- .454 c. TPM exports  $E_1$  and erases  $w$  from set A.
- .455 17.Stage 16
- .456 a. TPM imports a non-secret value  $c_1$  (160-bit).
- .457 b. TPM generates a non-secret value  $NT$  (160-bit) from the RNG.
- .458 c. TPM computes a non-secret value  $c$  (160-bit) =  $H(c_1 || NT)$ .
- .459 d. TPM save  $c$  as part of set A.
- .460 e. TPM exports  $NT$
- .461 18.Stage 17
- .462 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s_0$  (352-bit) =  $r_0 + c^f_0$  over the integers.
- .463 b. TPM exports  $s_0$ .
- .464 19.Stage 18
- .465 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s_1$  (352-bit) =  $r_1 + c^f_1$  over the integers.
- .466 b. TPM exports  $s_1$ .
- .467 20.Stage 19
- .468 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s_2$  (1024-bit) =  $r_2 + c^*u_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$ .
- .469 b. TPM exports  $s_2$ .
- .470 21.Stage 20
- .471 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s'_2$  (1024-bit) =  $(r_2 + c^*u_0) \gg 1024$  over the integers.
- .472 b. TPM saves  $s'_2$  as part of set A.
- .473 c. TPM exports  $c$
- .474 22.Stage 21
- .475 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s_3$  (1272-bit) =  $r_3 + cu_1 + s'_2$  over the integers.
- .476 b. TPM exports  $s_3$  and erases  $s'_2$  from set A.
- .477 23.Stage 22
- .478 a. TPM imports a non-secret value  $u_2$  (1024-bit).
- .479 b. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $v_0$  (1024-bit) =  $u_2 + u_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$ .
- .480 c. TPM stores  $v_0$  as part of A.

.481 d. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $v'0$  (1024-bit) =  $(u2 + u0) \gg 1024$  over the integers.

.482 e. TPM saves  $v'0$  as part of set A.

.483 24.Stage 23

.484 a. TPM imports a non-secret value  $u3$  (1512-bit).

.485 b. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $v1$  (1520-bit) =  $u3 + u1 + v'0$  over the integers.

.486 c. TPM stores  $v1$  as part of A.

.487 d. TPM erases  $v'0$  from set A.

.488 25.Stage 24

.489 a. TPM makes self consistent set of all the data ( $n0$ , COUNT, R0, R1, S0, S1, n, G, q,  $v0$ ,  
.490  $v1$ ), where the values  $v0$ ,  $v1$  are secret – they need to be stored safely with the consistent  
.491 set, and the remaining is non-secret.

.492 b. TPM erases set A.

.493 **End of informative comment**

### .494 **33.3.3 SIGN**

.495 **Start of informative comment**

.496 This entire section is informative

.497 1. Stage 0 & 1

.498 a. TPM imports and verifies a self consistent set of all the data including:

.499 i.  $n0$  (2048-bit),

.500 ii. COUNT (8-bit),

.501 iii. R0 (2048-bit),

.502 iv. R1 (2048-bit),

.503 v. S0 (2048-bit),

.504 vi. S1 (2048-bit),

.505 vii. n (2048-bit),

.506 viii.  $\gamma$  (2048-bit),

.507 ix. q (208-bit),

.508 x.  $v0$  (1024-bit),

.509 xi.  $v1$  (1520-bit).

.510 xii. If the verification does not succeed, TPM refuses to continue.

.511 b. TPM stores the above values as part of a new set A.

.512 c. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $f0$  (104-bit) =  $f \bmod 2104$ .

.513 d. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $f1$  (104-bit) =  $f \gg 104$ .

.514 e. TPM stores  $f0$  and  $f1$  as part of set A.

- .515 f. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $r_0$  (344-bit) from the RNG.
- .516 g. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $r_1$  (344-bit) from the RNG.
- .517 h. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $r_2$  (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- .518 i. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret  $r_4$  (1752-bit) from the RNG.
- .519 j. TPM stores  $r_0$ ,  $r_1$ ,  $r_2$ ,  $r_4$ , as part of set A.
- .520 2. Stage 2
- .521 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P_1$  (2048-bit) =  $(R_0^{r_0}) \bmod n$  and stores  $P_1$  as part of
- .522 set A.
- .523 3. Stage 3
- .524 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P_2$  (2048-bit) =  $P_1 \cdot (R_1^{r_1}) \bmod n$ , stores  $P_2$  as part of
- .525 set A and erases  $P_1$  from set A.
- .526 4. Stage 4
- .527 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $P_3$  (2048-bit) =  $P_2 \cdot (S_0^{r_2}) \bmod n$ , stores  $P_3$  as part of
- .528 set A and erases  $P_2$  from set A.
- .529 5. Stage 5
- .530 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $T$  (2048-bit) =  $P_3 \cdot (S_1^{r_4}) \bmod n$ .
- .531 b. TPM erases  $P_3$  from set A.
- .532 c. TPM exports  $T$ .
- .533 6. Stage 6
- .534 a. TPM imports a non-secret value  $w$  (2048-bit).
- .535 b. TPM computes  $w_1 = w^q \bmod G$ .
- .536 c. TPM verifies if  $w_1 = 1$  holds. If it doesn't hold, TPM refuses to continue.
- .537 d. If it does hold, TPM saves  $w$  as part of set A.
- .538 7. Stage 7
- .539 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $E$  (2048-bit) =  $w^f \bmod G$ .
- .540 b. TPM exports  $E$  and erases  $f$  from set A.
- .541 8. Stage 8
- .542 a. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret  $r$  (208-bit) =  $r_0 + 2^{104} \cdot r_1 \bmod q$ .
- .543 b. TPM computes a non-secret value  $E_1$  (2048-bit) =  $w^r \bmod G$ .
- .544 c. TPM exports  $E_1$  and erases  $w$  and  $E_1$  from set A.
- .545 9. Stage 9
- .546 a. TPM imports a non-secret value  $c_1$  (160-bit).
- .547 b. TPM generates a non-secret value  $NT$  (160-bit) from the RNG.
- .548 c. TPM computes a non-secret value  $c_2$  (160-bit) =  $H(c_1 || NT)$  and erases  $c_1$  from set A.
- .549 d. TPM saves  $c_2$  as part of set A.

- .550 e. TPM exports NT.
- .551 10.Stage 10
- .552 a. TPM imports a non-secret value  $b$  (1-bit).
- .553 b. If  $b = 1$ , TPM imports a non-secret value  $m$  (160-bit).
- .554 c. TPM computes a non-secret value  $c$  (160-bit) =  $H(c2 || b || m)$  and erases  $c2$  from set A.
- .555 d. If  $b = 0$ , TPM imports an RSA public key,  $eAIK$  ( $= 2^{16} + 1$ ) and  $nAIK$  (2048-bit).
- .556 e. TPM computes a non-secret value  $c$  (160-bit) =  $H(c2 || b || nAIK)$  and erases  $c2$  from set  
.557 A.
- .558 f. TPM exports  $c$ .
- .559 11.Stage 11
- .560 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s0$  (352-bit) =  $r0 + c*f0$  over the integers.
- .561 b. TPM exports  $s0$ .
- .562 12.Stage 12
- .563 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s1$  (352-bit) =  $r1 + c*f1$  over the integers.
- .564 b. TPM exports  $s1$ .
- .565 13.Stage 13
- .566 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s2$  (1024-bit) =  $r2 + c*v0 \bmod 2^{1024}$ .
- .567 b. TPM exports  $s2$ .
- .568 14.Stage 14
- .569 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s'2$  (1024-bit) =  $(r2 + c*v0) \gg 1024$  over the integers.
- .570 b. TPM saves  $s'2$  as part of set A.
- .571 15.Stage 15
- .572 a. TPM computes a non-secret value  $s3$  (1760-bit) =  $r4 + cv1 + s'2$  over the integers.
- .573 b. TPM exports  $s3$  and erases  $s'2$  from set A.
- .574 c. TPM erases set A.
- .575 **End of informative comment**

## .576 **34. General Purpose IO**

### .577 **Start of informative comment**

.578 The GPIO capability allows an outside entity to output a signal on a GPIO pin, or read the  
.579 status of a GPIO pin. The solution is for a single pin, with no timing information. There is  
.580 no support for sending information on specific busses like SMBus or RS232. The design  
.581 does support the designation of more than one GPIO pin.

.582 There is no requirement as to the layout of the GPIO pin, or the routing of the wire from the  
.583 GPIO pin on the platform. A platform specific specification can add those requirements.

.584 To avoid the designation of additional command ordinals, the architecture uses the NV  
.585 Storage commands. A set of GPIO NV indexes map to individual GPIO pins.  
.586 TPM\_NV\_INDEX\_GPIO\_00 maps to the first GPIO pin. The platform specific specification  
.587 indicates the mapping of GPIO zero to a specific package pin.

.588 The TPM does not reserve any NV storage for the indicated pin; rather the TPM uses the  
.589 authorization mechanisms for NV storage to allow a rich set of controls on the use of the  
.590 GPIO pin. The TPM owner can specify when and how the platform can use the GPIO pin.  
.591 While there is no NV storage for the pin value, TRUE or FALSE, there is NV storage for the  
.592 authorization requirements for the pin.

.593 Using the NV attributes the GPIO pin may be either an input pin or an output pin.

### .594 **End of informative comment**

- .595 1. The TPM MAY support the use of a GPIO pin defined by the NV storage mechanisms.
- .596 2. The GPIO pin MAY be either an input or an output pin.

## .597 **35. Redirection**

### .598 **Informative comment**

.599 Redirection allows the TPM to output the results of operations to hardware other than the  
.600 normal TPM communication bus. The redirection can occur to areas internal or external to  
.601 the TPM. Redirection is only available to key operations (such as TPM\_UnBind,  
.602 TPM\_Unseal, and TPM\_GetPubKey). To use redirection the key must be created specifying  
.603 redirection as one of the keys attributes.

.604 When redirecting the output the TPM will not interpret any of the data and will pass the  
.605 data on without any modifications.

.606 The TPM\_SetRedirection command connects a destination location or port to a loaded key.  
.607 This connection remains so long as the key is loaded, and is saved along with other key  
.608 information on a saveContext(key), loadContext(key). If the key is reloaded using  
.609 TPM\_LoadKey, then TPM\_SetRedirection must be run again.

.610 Any use of TPM\_SetRedirection with a key that does not have the redirect attribute must  
.611 return an error. Use of key that has the redirect attribute without TPM\_SetRedirection being  
.612 set must return an error.

### .613 **End of informative comments**

- .614 1. The TPM MAY support redirection
- .615 2. If supported, the TPM MUST only use redirection on keys that have the redirect attribute  
.616 set
- .617 3. A key that is tagged as a “redirect” key MUST be a leaf key in the TPM Protected Storage  
.618 blob hierarchy. A key that is tagged as a “redirect” key CAN NEVER be a parent key.
- .619 4. Output data that is the result of a cryptographic operation using the private portion of a  
.620 “redirect” key:
  - .621 a. MUST be passed to an alternate output channel
  - .622 b. MUST NOT be passed to the normal output channel
  - .623 c. MUST NOT be interpreted by the TPM
- .624 5. When command input or output is redirected the TPM MUST respond to the command  
.625 as soon as the ordinal finishes processing
  - .626 a. The TPM MUST indicate to any subsequent commands that the TPM is busy and  
.627 unable to accept additional command until the redirection is complete
  - .628 b. The TPM MUST allow for the resetting of the redirection channel
- .629 6. Redirection MUST be available for the following commands:
  - .630 a. TPM\_Unseal
  - .631 b. TPM\_UnBind
  - .632 c. TPM\_GetPubKey
  - .633 d. TPM\_Seal
  - .634 e. TPM\_Quote

## .635 **36. Structure Versioning**

### .636 **Start of informative comment**

.637 In version 1.1 some structures also contained a version indicator. The TPM set the indicator  
.638 to indicate the version of the TPM that was creating the structure. This was incorrect  
.639 behavior. The functionality of determining the version of a structure is radically different in  
.640 1.2.

.641 Most structures will contain a TPM\_STRUCTURE\_TAG. All future structures must contain  
.642 the tag, the only structures that do not contain the tag are 1.1 structures that are not  
.643 modified in 1.2. This restriction keeps backwards compatibility with 1.1.

.644 Any 1.2 structure must not contain a 1.1 tagged structure. For instance the TPM\_KEY  
.645 complex, if set at 1.2, must not contain a PCR\_INFO structure. The TPM\_KEY 1.2 structure  
.646 must contain a PCR\_INFO\_LONG structure. The converse is also true 1.1 structures must  
.647 not contain any 1.2 structures.

.648 The TPM must not allow the creation of any mixed structures. This implies that a command  
.649 that deals with keys, for instance, must ensure that a complete 1.1 or 1.2 structure is  
.650 properly built and validated on the creation and use of the key.

.651 The tag structure is set as a UINT16. This allows for a reasonable number of structures  
.652 without wasting space in the buffers.

.653 To obtain the current TPM version the caller must use the TPM\_GetCapability command.

.654 The tag is not a complete validation of the validity of a structure. The tag provides a  
.655 reference for the structure and the TPM or caller is responsible for determining the validity  
.656 of any remaining fields. For instance, in the TPM\_KEY structure the tag would indicate  
.657 TPM\_KEY but the TPM would still use tpmProof and the various digests to ensure the  
.658 structure integrity.

### .659 7. Compatibility and notification

.660 In 1.1 TPM\_CAP\_VERSION (index 19) returned a version structure with 1.1.x.x. The x.x was  
.661 for manufacturer information and the x.x also was set version structures. In 1.2  
.662 TPM\_CAP\_VERSION will return 1.1.0.0. Any 1.2 structure that uses the version information  
.663 will set the x.x to 0.0 in the structure. TPM\_CAP\_MANUFACTURER\_VER (index 21) will  
.664 return 1.2.x.x. The 1.2 structures do not contain the version structure. The rationale  
.665 behind this is that the structure tag will indicate the version of the structure. So changing a  
.666 correct structure will result in a new tag and there is no need for a separate version  
.667 structure.

.668 For further compatibility the quote function always returns 1.1.0.0 in the version  
.669 information regardless of the size of the incoming structure. All other functions may regard  
.670 a 2 byte sizeofselect structure as indicative of a 1.1 structure. The TPM handles all of the  
.671 structures according to the input, the only exception being TPM\_CertifyKey where the TPM  
.672 does not need to keep the input version of the structure.

### .673 **End of informative comment**

- .674 1. The TPM MUST support 1.1 and 1.2 defined structures
- .675 2. The TPM MUST ensure that 1.1 and 1.2 structures are not mixed in the same overall  
.676 structure

- .677        a. For instance in the TPM\_KEY structure if the structure is 1.1 then PCR\_INFO MUST
- .678            be set and if 1.2 the PCR\_INFO\_LONG structure must be set
- .679    3. On input the TPM MUST ignore the lower two bytes of the version structure
- .680    4. On output the TPM MUST set the lower two bytes to 0 of the version structure

## .681 **37. Certified Migration Key Type**

### .682 **Start of informative comment**

.683 In version 1.1 there were two key types, non-migration and migration keys. The TPM would  
.684 only certify non-migrating keys. There is a need for a key that allows migration but allows  
.685 for certification. This proposal is to create a key that allows for migration but still has  
.686 properties that the TPM can certify.

.687 These new keys are “certifiable migratable keys” or CMK. This designation is to separate the  
.688 keys from either the normal migration or non-migration types of keys. The TPM Owner is  
.689 not required to use these keys.

.690 Two entities may participate in the CMK process. The first is the Migration-Selection  
.691 Authority and the second is the Migration Authority (MA).

### .692 **Migration Selection Authority (MSA)**

.693 The MSA controls the migration of the key but does not handle the migrated itself.

### .694 **Migration Authority (MA)**

.695 A Migration Authority actually handles the migrated key.

### .696 **Use of MSA and MA**

.697 Migration of a CMK occurs using TPM\_CMK\_CreateBlob (TPM\_CreateMigrationBlob cannot  
.698 be used). The TPM Owner authorizes the migration destination (as usual), and the key  
.699 owner authorizes the migration transformation (as usual). An MSA authorizes the migration  
.700 destination as well. If the MSA is the migration destination, no MSA authorization is  
.701 required.

### .702 **End of informative comment**

## .703 **37.1 Certified Migration Requirements**

### .704 **Start of informative comment**

.705 The following list details the design requirements for the controlled migration keys

### .706 **Key Protections**

.707 The key must be protected by hardware and an entity trusted by the key user.

### .708 **Key Certification**

.709 The TPM must provide a mechanism to provide certification of the key protections (both  
.710 hardware and trusted entity)

### .711 **Owner Control**

.712 The TPM Owner must control the selection of the trusted entity

### .713 **Control Delegation**

.714 The TPM Owner may delegate the ability to create the keys but the decision must be explicit

### .715 **Linkage**

.716 The architecture must not require linking the trusted entity and the key user

### .717 **Key Type**

:718 The key may be any type of migratable key (storage or signing)

:719 **Interaction**

:720 There must be no required interaction between the trusted entity and the TPM during the  
:721 key creation process

:722 **End of informative comment**

:723 **37.2 Key Creation**

:724 **Start of informative comment**

:725 The command TPM\_CMK\_CreateKey creates a CMK where control of the migration is by a  
:726 MSA or MA. The process uses the MSA public key (actually a digest of the MA public key) as  
:727 input to TPM\_CMK\_CreateKey. The key creation process establishes a migrationAuth that is  
:728 SHA-1(tpmProof || SHA-1(MA pubkey) || SHA-1(source pubkey)).

:729 The use of tpmProof is essential to prove that CMK creation occurs on a TPM. The use of  
:730 “source pubkey” explicitly links a migration AuthData value to a particular public key, to  
:731 simplify verification that a specific key is being migrated.

:732 **End of informative comment**

:733 **37.3 Migrate CMK to a MA**

:734 **Start of informative comment**

:735 Migration of a CMK to a destination other than the MSA:

:736 **TPM\_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH Creation**

:737 The TPM Owner authorizes the creation of a TPM\_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH structure using  
:738 TPM\_AuthorizeMigrationKey command. The structure contains the destination  
:739 migrationKey, the migrationScheme (which must be set to TPM\_MS\_RESTRICT\_APPROVE  
:740 or TPM\_MS\_RESTRICT\_APPROVE\_DOUBLE) and a digest of tpmProof.

:741 **MA Approval**

:742 The MA signs a TPM\_CMK\_AUTH structure, which contains the digest of the MA public key,  
:743 the digest of the destination (or parent) public key and a digest of the public portion of the  
:744 key to be migrated

:745 **TPM Owner Authorization**

:746 The TPM Owner authorizes the MA approval using TPM\_CMK\_CreateTicket and produces a  
:747 signature ticket

:748 **Key Owner Authorization**

:749 The CMK owner passes the TPM Owner MA authorization, the MSA Approval and the  
:750 signature ticket to the TPM\_CMK\_CreateBlob using the key owners authorization.

:751 Thus the TPM owner, the key’s owner, and the MSA, all cooperate to migrate a key  
:752 produced by TPM\_CMK\_CreateBlob.

:753 **End of informative comment**

## :754 **37.4 Migrate CMK to a MSA**

### :755 **Start of informative comment**

:756 Migrate CMK directly to a MSA

### :757 **TPM\_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH Creation**

:758 The TPM Owner authorizes the creation of a TPM\_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH structure using  
:759 TPM\_AuthorizeMigrationKey command. The structure contains the destination  
:760 migrationKey (which must be the MSA public key), the migrationScheme (which must be set  
:761 to TPM\_MS\_RESTRICT\_MIGRATE) and a digest of tpmProof.

### :762 **Key Owner Authorization**

:763 The CMK owner passes the TPM\_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH to the TPM in a  
:764 TPM\_CMK\_CreateBlob using the CMK owner authorization.

### :765 **Double Wrap**

:766 If specified, through the MS\_MIGRATE scheme, the TPM double wraps the CMK information  
:767 such that the only way a recipient can unwrap the key is with the cooperation of the CMK  
:768 owner.

### :769 **Proof of Control**

:770 To prove to the MA and to a third party that migration of a key is under MSA control, a  
:771 caller passes the MA's public key (actually its digest) to TPM\_CertifyKey, to create a  
:772 TPM\_CERTIFY\_INFO structure. This now contains a digest of the MA's public key.

:773 A CMK be produced without cooperation from the MA: the caller merely provides the MSA's  
:774 public key. When the restricted key is to be migrated, the public key of the intended  
:775 destination, plus the CERTIFY\_INFO structure are sent to the MSA. The MSA extracts the  
:776 migrationAuthority digest from the CERTIFY\_INFO structure, verifies that  
:777 migrationAuthority corresponds to the MSA's public key, creates and signs a  
:778 TPM\_RESTRICTEDKEYAUTH structure, and sends that signature back to the caller. Thus  
:779 the MSA never needs to touch the actual migrated data.

### :780 **End of informative comment**

## :781 **38. Revoke Trust**

### :782 **Start of informative comment**

:783 There are circumstances where clearing all keys and values within the TPM is either  
:784 desirable or necessary. These circumstances may involve both security and privacy  
:785 concerns.

:786 Platform trust is demonstrated using the EK Credential, Platform Credential and the  
:787 Conformance Credentials. There is a direct and cryptograph relationship between the EK  
:788 and the EK Credential and the Platform Credential. The EK and Platform credentials can  
:789 only demonstrate platform trust when they can be validated by the Endorsement Key.

:790 This command is called revoke trust because by deleting the EK, the EK Credential and the  
:791 Platform Credential are dissociated from platform therefore invalidating them resulting in  
:792 the revocation of the trust in the platform. From a trust perspective, the platform associated  
:793 with these specific credentials no longer exists. However, any transaction that occurred  
:794 prior to invoking this command will remain valid and trusted to the same extent they would  
:795 be valid and trusted if the platform were physically destroyed.

:796 This is a non-reversible function. Also, along with the EK, the Owner is also deleted  
:797 removing all non-migratable keys and owner-specified state.

:798 It is possible to establish new trust in the platform by creating a new EK using the  
:799 TPM\_CreateRevocableEK command. (It is not possible to create an EK using the  
:800 TPM\_CreateEndorsementKeyPair because that command is not allowed if the revoke trust  
:801 command is allowed.) Establishing trust in the platform, however, is more than just  
:802 creating the EK. The EK Credential and the Platform Credential must also be created and  
:803 associated with the new EK as described above. (The conformance credentials may be  
:804 obtained from the TPM and Platform manufacturer.) These credentials must be created by  
:805 an entity that is trusted by those entities interested in the trust of the platform. This may  
:806 not be a trivial task. For example, an entity willing to create these credentials my want to  
:807 examine the platform and require physical access during the new EK generation process.

:808 Besides calling one of the two EK creation functions to create the EK, the EK may be  
:809 "squirted" into the TPM by an external source. If this method is used, tight controls must be  
:810 placed on the process used to perform this function to prevent exposure or intentional  
:811 duplication of the EK. Since the revocation and re-creation of the EK are functions intended  
:812 to be performed after the TPM leaves the trusted manufacturing process, squirting of the EK  
:813 must be disallowed if the revoke trust command is executed.

### :814 **End of informative comment**

- :815 1. The TPM MUST not allow both the TPM\_CreateRevocableEK and the  
:816 TPM\_CreateEndorsementKeyPair functions to be operational.
- :817 2. After an EK is created the TPM MUST NOT allow a new EK to be "squirted" for the  
:818 lifetime of the TPM.
- :819 3. The EK Credential MUST provide an indication within the EK Credential as to how the  
:820 EK was created. The valid permutations are:
  - :821 a. Squirted, non-revocable
  - :822 b. Squirted, revocable

- .823 c. Internally generated, non-revocable
- .824 d. Internally generated, revocable
- .825 4. If the method for creating the EK during manufacturing is squiring the EK may be either
- .826 non-revocable or revocable. If it is revocable, the method must provide the insertion or
- .827 extraction of the EKreset value.

## .828 **39. Mandatory and Optional Functional Blocks**

### .829 **Start of informative comment**

.830 This section lists the main functional blocks of a TPM (in arbitrary order), states whether  
.831 that block is mandatory or optional in the main TPM specification, and provides brief  
.832 justification for that choice.

.833 Important notes:

.834 1. The default classification of a TPM function block is “mandatory”, since reclassification  
.835 from mandatory to optional enables the removal of a function from existing  
.836 implementations, while reclassification from optional to mandatory may require the addition  
.837 of functionality to existing implementations.

.838 2. Mandatory functions will be reclassified as optional functions if those functions are not  
.839 required in some particular type of TCG trusted platform.

.840 3. If a functional block is mandatory in the main specification, the functionality must be  
.841 present in all TCG trusted platforms.

.842 4. If a functional block is optional in the main specification, each individual platform-  
.843 specific specification must declare the status of that functionality as either (1) “mandatory-  
.844 specific” (the functionality must be present in all platforms of that type), or (2) “optional-  
.845 specific” (the functionality is optional in that type of platform), or (3) “excluded-specific” (the  
.846 functionality must not be present in that type of platform).

### .847 **End of informative comment**

.848 Classification of TPM functional blocks

.849 1. Legacy (v1.1b) features

.850 a. Anything that was mandatory in v1.1b continues to be mandatory in v1.2. Anything  
.851 that was optional in v1.1b continues to be optional in v1.2.

.852 b. V1.2 must be backwards compatible with v1.1b. All TPM features in v1.1b were  
.853 discussed in depth when v1.1b was written, and anything that wasn't thought  
.854 strictly necessary was tagged as "optional".

.855 2. Number of PCRs

.856 a. The platform specific specification controls the number of PCR on a platform. The  
.857 TPM MUST implement the mandatory number of PCR specified for a particular  
.858 platform

.859 i. TPMs designed to work on multiple platforms MUST provide the appropriate  
.860 number of TPM for all intended platforms. I.e. if one platform requires 16 PCR  
.861 and the other platform 24 the TPM would have to supply 24 PCR.

.862 b. For TPMs providing backwards compatibility with 1.1 TPM on the PC platform, there  
.863 MUST be 16 static PCR.

.864 3. Sessions

.865 a. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 3 active sessions

.866 i. Active means currently loaded and addressable inside the TPM

- .867           ii. Without 3 active sessions many TPM commands cannot function
- .868       b. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 16 concurrent sessions
- .869           i. The contextList of currently available session has a minimum size of 16
- .870           ii. Providing for more concurrent sessions allows the resource manager additional
- .871               flexibility and speed
- .872   4. NVRAM
- .873       a. There are 20 bytes mandatory of NVRAM in v1.2 as specified by the main
- .874       specification. A platform specific specification can require a larger amount of NVRAM
- .875       b. Cost is important. The mandatory amount of NVRAM must be as small as possible,
- .876       because different platforms will require different amounts of NVRAM. 20 bytes are
- .877       required for (DIR) backwards compatibility with v1.1b.
- .878   5. New key types
- .879       a. The new signing keys are mandatory in v1.2 because they plug a security hole.
- .880   6. Direct Anonymous Attestation
- .881       a. This is optional in v1.2
- .882       b. Cost is important. The DAA function consumes more TPM resources than any other
- .883       TPM function, but some platform specific specifications (some servers, for example)
- .884       may have no need for the anonymity and pseudonymity provided by DAA.
- .885   7. Transport sessions
- .886       a. These are mandatory in v1.2.
- .887       b. Transport sessions
- .888           i. Enable protection of data submitted to a TPM and produced by a TPM
- .889           ii. Enable proof of the TPM commands executed during an arbitrary session.
- .890   8. Resettable Endorsement Key
- .891       a. This is optional in v1.2
- .892       b. Cost is important. Resettable EKs are valuable in some markets segments, but cause
- .893       more complexity than non-resettable EKs, which are expected to be the dominant
- .894       type of EK
- .895   9. Monotonic Counter
- .896       a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- .897       b. A monotonic counter is essential to enable software to defeat certain types of attack,
- .898       by enabling it to determine the version (revision) of dynamic data.
- .899   10. Time Ticks
- .900       a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- .901       b. Time stamping is a function that is potentially beneficial to both a user and system
- .902       software.
- .903   11. Delegation (includes DSAP)

- .904 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- .905 b. Delegation enables the well-established principle of least privilege to be applied to
- .906 Owner authorized commands.
- .907 12.GPIO
- .908 a. This is optional in v1.2
- .909 b. Cost is important. Not all types of platform will require a secure intra-platform
- .910 method of key distribution
- .911 13.Locality
- .912 a. The use of locality is optional in v1.2
- .913 b. The structures that define locality are mandatory
- .914 c. Locality is an essential part of many (new) TPM commands, but the definition of
- .915 locality varies widely from platform to platform, and may not be required by some
- .916 types of platforms.
- .917 d. It is mandatory that a platform specific specification indicate the definitions of
- .918 locality on the platform. It is perfectly reasonable to only define one locality and
- .919 ignore all other uses of locality on a platform
- .920 14.TPM-audit
- .921 a. This is optional in v1.2
- .922 b. Proper TPM-audit requires support to reliably store logs and control access to the
- .923 TPM, and any mechanism (an OS, for example) that could provide such support is
- .924 potentially capable of providing an audit log without using TPM-audit. Nevertheless,
- .925 TPM-audit might be useful to verify operation of any and all software, including an
- .926 OS. TPM-audit is believed to be of no practical use in a client, but might be valuable
- .927 in a server, for example.
- .928 15.Certified Migration
- .929 a. This is optional in v1.2
- .930 b. Cost is important. Certified Migration enables a business model that may be
- .931 nonsense for some platforms.

## .932 40. Optional Authentication Encryption

### .933 **Start of informative comment**

.934 The standard authorization encryption mechanism is to use XOR. This is sufficient for  
.935 almost all use models. There may be additional use models where a different encryption  
.936 mechanism would be beneficial. This section adds an optional encryption mechanism for  
.937 those authorizations.

.938 The encryption algorithm is either AES or 3DES. The key and IV for the encryption uses the  
.939 shared secret generated with the OSAP session.

### .940 **End of informative comment**

- .941 1. The TPM MAY support AES or 3DES encryption of AuthData secrets
  - .942 a. Encrypted AuthData values occur in the following commands
    - .943 i. TPM\_CreateWrapKey
    - .944 ii. TPM\_ChangeAuth
    - .945 iii. TPM\_ChangeAuthOwner
    - .946 iv. TPM\_Seal
    - .947 v. TPM\_Sealx
    - .948 vi. TPM\_MakeIdentity
    - .949 vii. TPM\_CreateCounter
    - .950 viii. TPM\_CMK\_CreateKey
    - .951 ix. TPM\_NV\_DefineSpace
    - .952 x. TPM\_Delegate\_CreateKeyDelegation
    - .953 xi. TPM\_Delegate\_CreateOwnerDelegation
- .954 2. The user indicates the use of the optional encryption by using a different entity type  
.955 during the OSAP session creation.
  - .956 a. The upper byte of the entity type indicates the encryption algorithm.
  - .957 b. The TPM internally stores the encryption indication as part of the session and  
.958 enforces the encryption choice on all subsequent uses of the session.
  - .959 c. When TPM\_ENTITY\_TYPE is used for ordinals other than TPM\_OSAP or TPM\_DSAP  
.960 (i.e., for cases where there is no ADIP encryption action), the TPM\_ENTITY\_TYPE  
.961 upper byte MUST be 0x00.
- .962 3. If TPM\_PERMANENT\_FLAGS -> FIPS is TRUE
  - .963 a. Then all encrypted authorizations MUST use AES
- .964 4. The key for the encryption algorithm is the OSAP shared secret.
  - .965 a. For AES128, the key is the first 16 bytes of the OSAP shared secret
    - .966 i. There is no support for AES keys greater than 128
- .967 5. The IV is SHA-1 of (authLastNonceEven || nonceOdd)

- .968 a. For AES128, use the first 16 bytes of the IV
- .969 i. TPM\_CreateWrapKey also uses nonceOdd for the IV

.970 **41. 1.1a and 1.2 Differences**

.971 **Start of informative comment**

.972 All 1.2 TPM commands are completely compliant with 1.1b commands with the following  
.973 known exceptions.

- .974 1. TSC\_PhysicalPresence does not support configuration and usage in a single step.
- .975 2. TPM\_GetPubKey is unable to read the SRK unless TPM\_PERMANENT\_FLAGS ->  
.976 readSRKPub is TRUE
- .977 3. TPM\_SetTempDeactivated now requires either physical presence or TPM Operators  
.978 authorization to execute
- .979 4. TPM\_OwnerClear does not modify TPM\_PERMANENT\_DATA -> authDIR[0].

.980 **End of informative comment**